Contents

About NetIQ Corporation **11**
About this Book **13**

1 Advanced Authentication Overview **15**

How Is Advanced Authentication Better Than Other Solutions . . . 15
Key Features . . . 15
Advanced Authentication Server Components . . . 16
Administration Portal . . . 16
Self-Service Portal . . . 17
Helpdesk Portal . . . 17
Reporting Portal . . . 17
Architecture . . . 18
Basic Architecture . . . 18
Enterprise Level Architecture . . . 19
Enterprise Architecture With A Load Balancer . . . 21
Terminologies . . . 22
Authentication Method . . . 22
Authentication Chain . . . 22
Authentication Event . . . 22
Endpoint . . . 22

Part I Configuring Advanced Authentication **23**

2 Logging In to the Advanced Authentication Administration Portal **25**

Part II Configuring the Advanced Authentication Settings **27**

3 Managing Dashboard **29**

Adding Widgets . . . 30
Pie Chart . . . 30
Stacked Chart . . . 30
Activity Stream . . . 30
Enroll Activity Stream . . . 30
Users . . . 31
Authenticators . . . 31
Licenses . . . 31
Event Count Line Chart . . . 31
Events Count Line Chart Grouped by Field . . . 31
Distinct Events Count Line Chart . . . 31
Distinct Events Count Line Chart Grouped by Field . . . 32
Customizing Dashboard . . . 32
Updating Dashboard to View Real Time or Historical Data . . . 32
Customizing the Default Widgets . . . 32
Server Metrics . . . 33
CPU and Memory Usage Per Server . . . 34
Tenants . . . 34
Authentications . . . 34
Logons Per Result . . . 34

Total Users . . . 34
Total Users Per Event . . . 34
Activity Stream . . . 34
Successful/Failed Logons . . . 34
Top Events With Successful Logon Per Chain . . . 34
Top Events With Failed Logon Per Method . . . 34
Top 10 Events . . . 34
Top 10 chains With Successful Result . . . 35
Top 10 Servers . . . 35
Top 10 Tenants . . . 35
Top 10 Repositories . . . 35
Top 5 Events for Logons . . . 35
Top 5 Users for Logons . . . 35
Top 10 Users With Failed Logon . . . 35
Top 10 Users . . . 35
Top 10 Methods With Failed Result . . . 35
Exporting Widgets . . . 35

4 Adding a Repository 37

Adding an LDAP Repository . . . 37
Advanced Settings . . . 39
Adding an SQL Database . . . 46
Adding an External Repository . . . 47
Local Repository . . . 47

5 Configuring Methods 49

Customizing Method Names . . . 50
Configuring Tenancy Settings . . . 50
BankID . . . 50
Bluetooth . . . 51
Card . . . 51
Email OTP . . . 52
Emergency Password . . . 53
Facial Recognition . . . 54
Generating Access Key and Endpoint URL . . . 54
Configuring Facial Recognition Method . . . 54
FIDO 2.0 . . . 55
Fingerprint . . . 55
LDAP Password . . . 58
OATH OTP . . . 59
HOTP . . . 59
TOTP . . . 60
Importing PSKC or CSV Files . . . 62
CSV File Format To Import OATH Compliant Tokens . . . 63
Password . . . 63
PKI . . . 64
PKI Device . . . 64
Virtual Smartcard . . . 66
RADIUS Client . . . 68
Security Questions . . . 69
Adding Questions . . . 70
Smartphone . . . 70
SMS OTP . . . 74
Swisscom Mobile ID . . . 75

FIDO U2F . . . 76
Configuring the Certificate Settings . . . 77
Configuring Facets . . . 77
Configuring Yubikey for Advanced Authentication Server . . . 78
Configuring a Web Server to Use the FIDO U2F Authentication . . . 78
Voice . . . 80
Voice OTP . . . 81
Web Authentication Method . . . 82
SAML for Advanced Authentication . . . 82
OpenID Connect for Advanced Authentication . . . 85
OAuth 2.0 for Advanced Authentication . . . 88
Windows Hello . . . 88

6 Creating a Chain 89

7 Configuring Events 93

Configuring an Existing Event . . . 93
ADFS Event . . . 95
AdminUI Event . . . 95
Authentication Agent Event . . . 95
Authenticators Management Event . . . 96
Helpdesk Event . . . 96
Helpdesk User Event . . . 97
Linux Logon Event . . . 97
Mac OS Logon Event . . . 97
Mainframe Logon Event . . . 97
NAM Event . . . 97
NCA Event . . . 97
RADIUS Server Event . . . 97
Report Logon Event . . . 97
Search Card Event . . . 98
Tokens Management Event . . . 98
Windows Logon Event . . . 98
Creating a Customized Event . . . 98
Creating a Generic Event . . . 98
Creating an OS Logon (Domain) Event . . . 99
Creating an OAuth 2.0 Event . . . 99
Creating a SAML 2.0 Event . . . 100
Creating a RADIUS Event . . . 101

8 Managing Endpoints 103

9 Configuring Policies 105

Authenticator Management Options Policy . . . 106
Enabling Sharing of Authenticators for the Helpdesk Administrators . . . 106
Disabling Re-Enrollment of the Authenticators in the Self-Service Portal . . . 106
Cache Options Policy . . . 107
Custom Messages . . . 107
Customizing Messages in the Custom Localization File . . . 108
Customizing a Specific Message on the Portal . . . 109
Customizing Authentication Request Message For Smartphone Method . . . 110
Customizing Prompt Messages of the Authentication Methods for RADIUS Event . . . 111
Customizing the Messages for Clients . . . 111
Custom CSS . . . 112
Delete Me Options . . . 113

Endpoint Management Options . . . 113
Event Categories . . . 114
Geo Fencing Options . . . 115
Google reCAPTCHA Options . . . 115
Registering the Google reCAPTCHA Account . . . 115
Configuring Google reCAPTCHA for Advanced Authentication . . . 116
Enabling the Google reCAPTCHA Options Policy for Events . . . 116
Helpdesk Options . . . 116
Linked Chains . . . 117
Lockout Options . . . 117
Login Options . . . 118
Logon Filter for Active Directory . . . 119
Mail Sender . . . 119
Password Filter for Active Directory . . . 121
Reporting Options . . . 121
SMS Sender . . . 122
Services Director Options . . . 125
Users Synchronization Options . . . 125
Voice Sender . . . 125
Web Authentication . . . 127
Configuring Settings for the SAML 2.0 Events . . . 127
Customizing the Login Page of Web Authentication Events . . . 127
Customizing Messages and Authentication Method Names for the Web Authentication Events . . . 133

10 Configuring the Server Options 135

Uploading the SSL Certificate . . . 135
Customizing the Login Page Background . . . 136
Uploading a Keytab File . . . 136

11 Adding a License 137

12 Exporting and Importing the Database 139

Importing the Database . . . 139

13 Adding a Report 141

14 Enrolling the Authentication Methods 149

15 Sample Configurations 151

Implementing Multi-Factor Authentication to VPN . . . 151
Prerequisites . . . 151
Considerations Before Configuration . . . 152
Add a Repository . . . 153
Configure Methods . . . 153
Create a Chain . . . 153
Configure Public External URLs Policy . . . 154
Assign Chain to RADIUS Server Event . . . 154
Configure the OpenVPN Server . . . 155
End User Tasks . . . 155
Securing Windows Workstation with Multi-Factor Authentication . . . 156
Prerequisites . . . 157

Points to Consider Before Configuration . . . 157
Add a Repository . . . 158
Configure Methods . . . 159
Create a Chain . . . 160
Configure SMS Sender Policy . . . 161
Assign Chain to Windows Logon Event . . . 161
End User Tasks . . . 161

Part III Configuring Integrations 163

16 OAuth 2.0 165

Building Blocks of OAuth 2.0 . . . 165
OAuth 2.0 Roles . . . 165
OAuth 2.0 Grants . . . 165
Sample OAuth 2.0 Application Integrated with Advanced Authentication . . . 168
Running the Sample Web Application . . . 173
OAuth 2.0 Attributes . . . 173
Non Standard Endpoints . . . 174

17 RADIUS Server 177

Customizing Prompt Messages For RADIUS Event . . . 178
Challenge-Response Authentication . . . 179

18 SAML 2.0 181

Integrating Advanced Authentication with SAML 2.0 . . . 181
Requesting Advanced Authentication Methods and Chains Through a SAML AuthnRequest . . . 182

19 Examples of Integrations 185

Configuring Integration with Barracuda . . . 185
Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server . . . 186
Configuring the Barracuda SSL VPN Appliance . . . 186
Authenticating on Barracuda SSL VPN Using Advanced Authentication . . . 187
Configuring Integration with Citrix NetScaler . . . 187
Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server . . . 187
Configuring the Citrix NetScaler Appliance . . . 188
Authenticating on the Citrix NetScaler Using Advanced Authentication . . . 188
Configuring Integration With Dell SonicWall SRA EX-Virtual Appliance . . . 189
Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server . . . 189
Configuring the Dell SonicWall SRA Appliance . . . 190
Authenticating on Dell SonicWall Workspace Using Advanced Authentication . . . 190
Configuring Integration with FortiGate . . . 190
Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server . . . 191
Configuring the FortiGate Appliance . . . 191
Authenticating on FortiGate Using Advanced Authentication . . . 191
Configuring Integration with OpenVPN . . . 192
Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server . . . 192
Configuring the OpenVPN Appliance . . . 193
Configuring Integration with Palo Alto GlobalProtect Gateway . . . 193
Adding the RADIUS Server . . . 194
Adding an Authentication Profile . . . 194
Configuring GlobalProtect Gateway . . . 194
Configuring Integration with Salesforce . . . 194
Configuring the Salesforce Domain Name . . . 195

Configuring the SAML Provider . . . 195
Configuring the Advanced Authentication SAML 2.0 Event . . . 196
Configuring to Authenticate on Salesforce with SAML 2.0 . . . 197
Configuring Integration with ADFS . . . 197
Configuring the Advanced Authentication SAML 2.0 Event . . . 198
Making the Corresponding Changes in ADFS . . . 199
Configuring Integration with Google G Suite . . . 200
Configuring Google G Suite . . . 200
Configuring the Advanced Authentication Event . . . 202
Configuring to Authenticate on Google G-Suite with SAML 2.0 . . . 202
Configuring Integration with Office 365 . . . 202
Configuring Advanced Authentication SAML 2.0 Event . . . 203
Making the Corresponding Changes in ADFS . . . 204
Authenticating on Office 365 . . . 204
Configuring Integration with Sentinel . . . 205
Configuring the CEF Log Forward Policy on Advanced Authentication . . . 205
Searching the Events on Sentinel . . . 205

Part IV Maintaining Advanced Authentication 207

20 Logging 209

Syslog . . . 210
RADIUS Logs . . . 224
Async Logs . . . 224
Fingerprint Logs . . . 224

21 Reporting 225

22 Managing Tokens 227

CSV File Format To Import OATH Compliant Tokens . . . 228

23 Searching a Card Holder’s Information 229

24 Troubleshooting 231

The ON/OFF Switch Is Broken If the Screen Resolution Is 110% . . . 231
Users Can Login Using the Old Password . . . 231
Error is Displayed in the User Report Section of the Helpdesk Portal . . . 231

Advanced Authentication 6.2

Administration Guide

February 2019

NetIQ

Legal Notice

For information about legal notices, trademarks, disclaimers, warranties, export and other use restrictions, U.S. Government rights, patent policy, and FIPS compliance, https://www.netiq.com/company/legal/.

Copyright © 2019 NetIQ Corporation, a Micro Focus company. All Rights Reserved.

About NetIQ Corporation

We are a global, enterprise software company, with a focus on the three persistent challenges in your environment: Change, complexity and risk—and how we can help you control them.

Our Viewpoint

Adapting to change and managing complexity and risk are nothing new

In fact, of all the challenges you face, these are perhaps the most prominent variables that deny you the control you need to securely measure, monitor, and manage your physical, virtual, and cloud computing environments.

Enabling critical business services, better and faster

We believe that providing as much control as possible to IT organizations is the only way to enable timelier and cost effective delivery of services. Persistent pressures like change and complexity will only continue to increase as organizations continue to change and the technologies needed to manage them become inherently more complex.

Our Philosophy

Selling intelligent solutions, not just software

In order to provide reliable control, we first make sure we understand the real-world scenarios in which IT organizations like yours operate—day in and day out. That's the only way we can develop practical, intelligent IT solutions that successfully yield proven, measurable results. And that's so much more rewarding than simply selling software.

Driving your success is our passion

We place your success at the heart of how we do business. From product inception to deployment, we understand that you need IT solutions that work well and integrate seamlessly with your existing investments; you need ongoing support and training post-deployment; and you need someone that is truly easy to work with—for a change. Ultimately, when you succeed, we all succeed.

Our Solutions

- Identity & Access Governance
- Access Management
- Security Management
- Systems & Application Management
- Workload Management
- Service Management

Contacting Sales Support

For questions about products, pricing, and capabilities, contact your local partner. If you cannot contact your partner, contact our Sales Support team.

Worldwide:	www.netiq.com/about_netiq/officelocations.asp
United States and Canada:	1-888-323-6768
Email:	info@netiq.com
Web Site:	www.netiq.com

Contacting Technical Support

For specific product issues, contact our Technical Support team.

Worldwide:	www.netiq.com/support/contactinfo.asp
North and South America:	1-713-418-5555
Europe, Middle East, and Africa:	+353 (0) 91-782 677
Email:	support@netiq.com
Web Site:	www.netiq.com/support

Contacting Documentation Support

Our goal is to provide documentation that meets your needs. The documentation for this product is available on the NetIQ Web site in HTML and PDF formats on a page that does not require you to log in. If you have suggestions for documentation improvements, click **Add Comment** at the bottom of any page in the HTML version of the documentation posted at www.netiq.com/documentation. You can also email Documentation-Feedback@netiq.com. We value your input and look forward to hearing from you.

Contacting the Online User Community

NetIQ Communities, the NetIQ online community, is a collaborative network connecting you to your peers and NetIQ experts. By providing more immediate information, useful links to helpful resources, and access to NetIQ experts, NetIQ Communities helps ensure you are mastering the knowledge you need to realize the full potential of IT investments upon which you rely. For more information, visit community.netiq.com.

About this Book

This Administration Guide is intended for system administrators and describes the procedure of Advanced Authentication Server appliance configuration.

Intended Audience

This book provides information for individuals responsible for understanding administration concepts and implementing a secure, distributed administration model.

1 Advanced Authentication Overview

Advanced Authentication™ is a multi-factor authentication solution that enables you to protect your sensitive data by using a more advanced way of authentication on top of the typical username and password authentication. With Advanced Authentication, you can authenticate on diverse platforms by using different types of authenticators such as Fingerprint, Card, and OTP. Advanced Authentication provides a single authentication framework that ensures secure access to all your devices with minimal administration.

Authentication comprises of the following three factors:

- Something that you know such as password, PIN, and security questions.
- Something that you have such as smartcard, token, and mobile phone.
- Something that you are such as biometrics (fingerprint or iris).

You can achieve multi-factor or strong authentication by using any two factors out of this list. For example, multi-factor authentication can include combination of a password and a token or a smartcard and a fingerprint.

This section contains the following topics:

- "How Is Advanced Authentication Better Than Other Solutions" on page 15
- "Key Features" on page 15
- "Advanced Authentication Server Components" on page 16
- "Architecture" on page 18
- "Terminologies" on page 22

How Is Advanced Authentication Better Than Other Solutions

Advanced Authentication leverages the needs of users to authenticate on different platforms with different needs. The following points explain how Advanced Authentication is different from other solutions:

- Works on multiple platforms such as Windows, Mac OS X, Linux and so on.
- Supports multi-site configurations that helps organizations to distribute the authentication globally.

Key Features

- **Multi-factor Authentication**: The solution provides a flexibility of combining more than twenty authentication methods to create authentication chains. You can assign these chains to different events to use the specific authentication chains for different kinds of endpoints.
- **Supports Multiple Repositories:** Advanced Authentication supports Active Directory, Active Directory Lightweight Domain Services, NetIQ eDirectory, and other RFC 2037 and RFC 2037 bis compliant LDAP repositories.

- **Supports Distributed Environments**: Advanced Authentication works on geographically distributed environments containing high loads.
- **Multitenancy**: A single Advanced Authentication solution can support multiple tenants to serve multiple customers with different environments.
- **Supports Multiple Platforms:** Advanced Authentication works on various platforms such as Windows, Linux, and Mac OS.
- **Helpdesk**: Advanced Authentication provides a separate role of Helpdesk or Security officer. A user with Helpdesk or Security Officer role can manage authenticators for the end users through the Helpdesk portal.
- **Supports the RADIUS Server**: Advanced Authentication Server contains a built-in RADIUS server to provide strong authentication for third-party RADIUS clients. Also, it can act as a RADIUS client for the third-party RADIUS servers.
- **Supports ADFS 3 and 4, OAuth 2.0, and SAML 2.0:** Advanced Authentication integrates with Active Directory Federation Services, OAuth 2.0, and SAML 2.0. This enables you to perform strong authentication for the users who need to access the third-party consumer applications.
- **Reporting**: Advance Authentication provides the Reporting portal that enables you to access different security reports. You can also create customized reports based on your requirement.
- **Syslog support**: Advanced Authentication provides the central logging server that can be used for log forwarding. You can configure the solution to forward logs to an external Syslog server.
- **FIPS 140-2 Compliant Encryption**: Advanced Authentication adheres to Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) 140-2.
- **Supports Localization**: Advanced Authentication supports several languages such as Arabic, Chinese, Dutch, and Danish.

Advanced Authentication Server Components

Advanced Authentication server comprises of the following components:

- **Administration Portal**

  For more information, see “Administration Portal” on page 16
- **Self-Service Portal**

  For more information, see “Self-Service Portal” on page 17
- **Helpdesk Portal**

  For more information, see “Helpdesk Portal” on page 17
- **Reporting Portal**

  For more information, see “Reporting Portal” on page 17

Administration Portal

Administration Portal is a centralized portal that helps you to configure and manage various authentication settings such as methods, events, and so on. You can also configure various policies that are required for authentication. You can perform the following tasks:

- **Add repositories**: A repository is a database that stores users information. For example: An organization, Digital Airlines contains an Active Directory that stores all of the user’s information such as username, telephone, address, and so on. Administrator can add this Active Directory to

Advanced Authentication solution to help different departments in the organization such as the IT, finance, HR, and Engineering departments to authenticate based on their requirements. For more information about how to add repositories, see "Adding a Repository".

- **Configure methods**: A method or an authenticator helps to confirm the identification of a user (or in some cases, a machine) that is trying to log on or access resources. You can configure the required settings for the appropriate methods depending on the requirement by each department. For more information about how to configure methods, see "Configuring Methods".
- **Create chains:** A chain is a combination of methods. Users must authenticate with all the methods in a chain. For example, a chain with Fingerprint and Card method can be applicable for the IT department and a chain with Smartphone, LDAP Password, and HOTP is applicable for the Engineering department. For more information about how to create chains, see "Creating a Chain".
- **Configure events**: An event is triggered by an external device or application that needs to perform authentication such as a Windows machine, a RADIUS client, a third party client and so on. After creating the chain, Administrator maps the chain to an appropriate event. For more information about how to configure events, see "Configuring Events".
- **Map endpoints**: An endpoint is a device on which you can authenticate. Endpoints can be computers, Laptops, tablets, and so on. For more information about how to configure endpoints, see "Managing Endpoints".
- **Configure policies**: An administrator can manage policies that are specific to users, devices, or locations to control a user's authentication. In Advanced Authentication, you can manage the policies in a centralized policy editor. For more information about how to configure policies, see "Configuring Policies".

Self-Service Portal

The Self-Service Portal allows users to manage the available authentication methods. This portal consists of **Enrolled authenticators** and **Add authenticator**. T**he Enrolled authenticators** section displays all the methods that users have enrolled. The **Add authenticator** section displays additional methods available for enrollment. You must configure and enable the Authenticators Management event to enable users to access the Self-Service portal. For more information on Self-Service portal, see *Advanced Authentication- User* guide.

Helpdesk Portal

The Helpdesk Portal allows the helpdesk administrators to enroll and manage the authentication methods for users. Helpdesk administrators can also link authenticators of a user to help authenticate to another user's account. For more information on Helpdesk portal, see the *Advanced Authentication- Helpdesk Administrator* guide.

Reporting Portal

The Reporting Portal allows you to create or customize security reports that provide information about user authentication. It also helps you understand the processor and memory loads. For more information on Reporting portal, see "Reporting".

Architecture

Advanced Authentication architecture is based on the following three levels of architecture:

- Basic Architecture

  For more information, see "Basic Architecture" on page 18
- Enterprise Level Architecture

  For more information, see "Enterprise Level Architecture" on page 19
- Enterprise Architecture With A Load Balancer

  For more information, see "Enterprise Architecture With A Load Balancer" on page 21

Basic Architecture

The basic architecture of Advanced Authentication is a simple configuration that requires only one Advanced Authentication server.

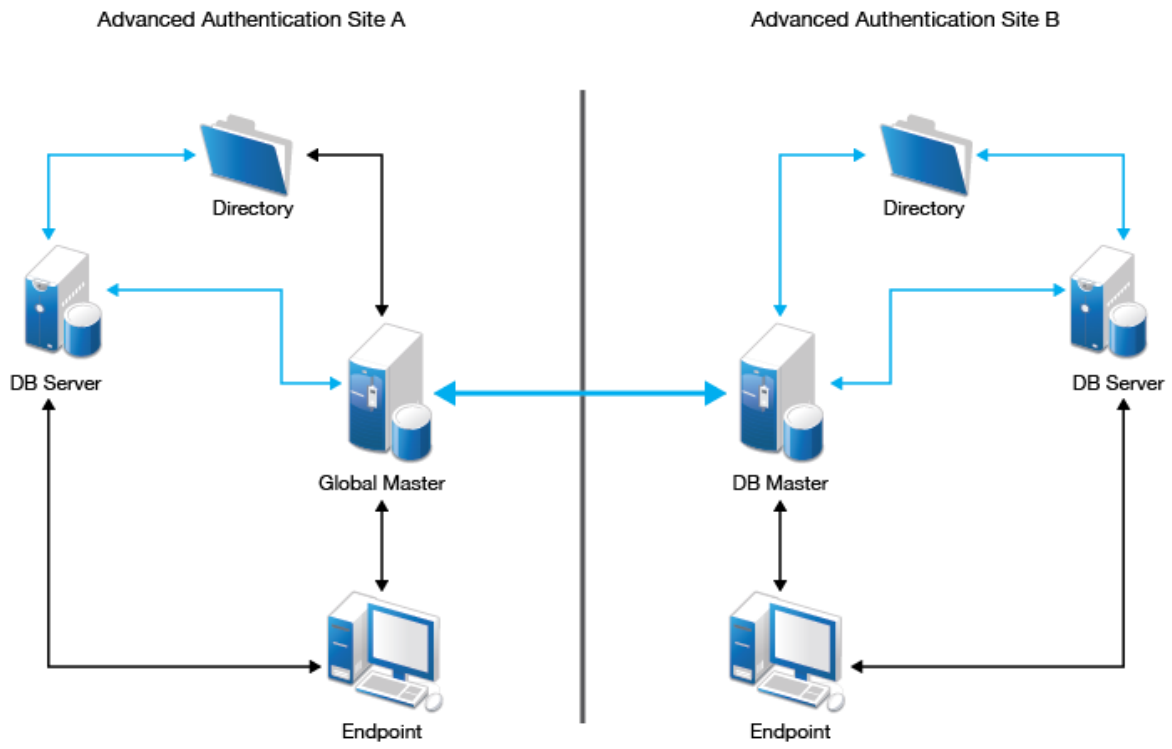
An Advanced Authentication server is connected to a directory such as Active Directory Domain Services, NetIQ eDirectory, Active Directory Lightweight Directory Service or other compliant LDAP directories. An Event Endpoint can be Windows, Linux or Mac OS X machine, NetIQ Access Manager, NetIQ CloudAccess, or RADIUS Client to authenticate through the RADIUS Server that is built-in the Advanced Authentication Server. For a complete list of supported events, see "Configuring Events".

Enterprise Level Architecture

In the enterprise level architecture of Advanced Authentication, you can create several sites for different geographical locations.

For example, the Figure 1-1 on page 19 displays two Advanced Authentication sites, **Site A** and **Site B.**

Figure 1-1 *Enterprise Level Architecture*



- **Site A**: The first site that is created for headquarters in New York. The first Advanced Authentication server of site A contains the **Global Master** and **Registrar** roles. This server contains a master database and it can be used to register new sites and servers.
- **Site B**: Another site created for the office in London. The structure of site B is similar to site A. The Global Master in another site has the DB Master role. DB servers interact with the DB Master.

  DB Server provides a database that is used for backup and fail-over. You can create a maximum of two DB servers per site. When the Global Master is unavailable, the DB server responds to the database requests. When the Global Master becomes available again, the DB server synchronizes with the Global Master and the Global Master becomes the primary point of contact for database requests again.

  Endpoints interact with Global Master or DB Master servers. When these servers are not available, they interact with DB servers.

NOTE: DB servers connect to each other directly. If the Global Master is down, the DB servers will replicate.

A Global Master must have a connection to each of the LDAP servers. Hence in a data center with Global Master, you must have LDAP servers for all the used domains.

Master servers do not initiate a connection to the DB servers. Master servers initiate connection to Master servers only. DB servers initiate connection to the DB Master of the same site and Registrar only.

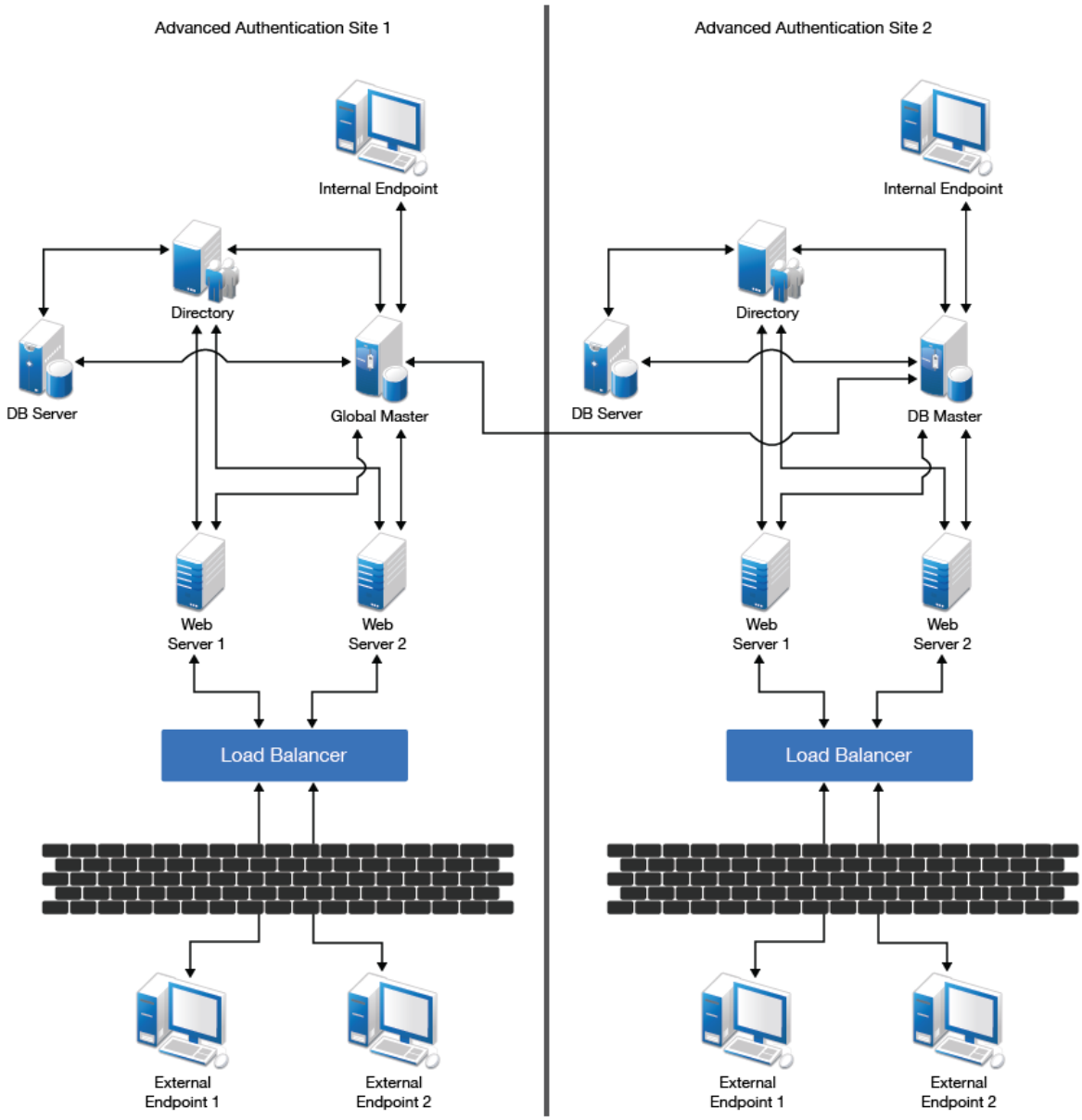
IMPORTANT: Ensure to take regular snapshots or to clone the primary site to protect from any hardware issues or any other accidental failures. It is recommended to do it each time after you change the configuration of repositories, methods, chains, events and policies, or add or remove servers in the cluster.

You can convert DB server of primary site to Global Master. This requires corresponding DNS changes. Nothing can be done if Global Master and all slaves are lost.

Enterprise Architecture With A Load Balancer

The enterprise architecture with a load balancer contains web servers and load balancers along with the components in Enterprise Level Architecture. Figure 1-2 on page 21 illustrates the Enterprise architecture with a load balancer.

Figure 1-2 *Enterprise Architecture with Load Balancer*



- **Web Servers**: Web server does not contain a database. It responds to the authentication requests and connects to Global Master. It is not recommended to deploy more than 5-6 web servers per site.
- **Load Balancer**: A load balancer provides an ability to serve authentication requests from **External Endpoints**. A load balancer is a third-party component. It must be configured to interact with Web servers.

WARNING: Do not place the Advanced Authentication server in Demilitarized Zone (DMZ). It is recommended to use Load Balancer to process authentication requests from the external endpoints.

Terminologies

- "Authentication Method" on page 22
- "Authentication Chain" on page 22
- "Authentication Event" on page 22
- "Endpoint" on page 22

Authentication Method

An authentication method verifies the identity of an individual who wants to access data, resources, or applications. Validating that identity establishes a trust relationship for further interactions.

Authentication Chain

An authentication chain is a combination of authentication methods. A user must pass all methods in the chain to be successfully authenticated. For example, if you create a chain with LDAP Password and SMS, a user must first specify the LDAP Password. If the password is correct, the system sends an SMS with a One-Time-Password (OTP) to the user's mobile. The user must specify the correct OTP to be authenticated.

You can create chains with multiple methods that are applicable for highly secure environments. You can create authentication chains for specific group of users in the repositories.

Authentication Event

An authentication event is triggered by an external device or application that needs to perform authentication. It can be triggered by a RADIUS Client (Citrix Netscaler, Cisco VPN, Juniper VPN and so on) or an API request. Each event can be configured with one or more authentication chains that enables a user to authenticate.

Endpoint

An endpoint is a device on which you can authenticate. Endpoints can be computers, Laptops, tablets, Smartphones, and so on.

Configuring Advanced Authentication

Advanced Authentication Server Appliance is intended for processing requests for authentication coming from the Advanced Authentication system users.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Chapter 2, “Logging In to the Advanced Authentication Administration Portal,” on page 25

2 Logging In to the Advanced Authentication Administration Portal

After you set up an applicable server mode, the Advanced Authentication Administration portal is displayed.

To log in to the Advanced Authentication Administration portal, perform the following steps:

1. Specify the administrator's credentials in the format: `repository\user` (**local\admin** by default).
2. Click **Next**.
3. The **Admin Password** chain is selected by default as the only available chain. Specify the password that you specified while setting up the DB Master server mode.
4. Click **Next**.

   The Dashboard page is displayed.
5. You can change the language from the list on the upper-right corner of the Administration portal.

   The languages supported are: Arabic, Canadian French, Chinese Simplified, Chinese Traditional, Danish, Dutch, English, French, German, Italian, Japanese, Polish, Portuguese (Brazilian), Russian, Spanish, Hebrew, and Swedish.

IMPORTANT: Password of **local\admin** account expires by default. For uninterrupted access to the Administration portal, it is strongly recommended to add authorized users or group of users from a configured repository to the **FULL ADMINS** role. Then you must assign chains, which contain methods that are enrolled for users, to the **AdminUI** event (at a minimum with an LDAP Password).

NOTE: It is not recommended to access the Advanced Authentication Administration portal through a load balancer, as the replicated data may not be displayed.

II Configuring the Advanced Authentication Settings

In the Administration portal, you can configure and manage various authentication settings such as methods, events, and so on. You can also configure various policies that are required for authentication.

Advanced Authentication Administration portal contains the Help option that guides you on how to configure all settings for your authentication framework. The Help section provides you with information on the specific section you are working on.

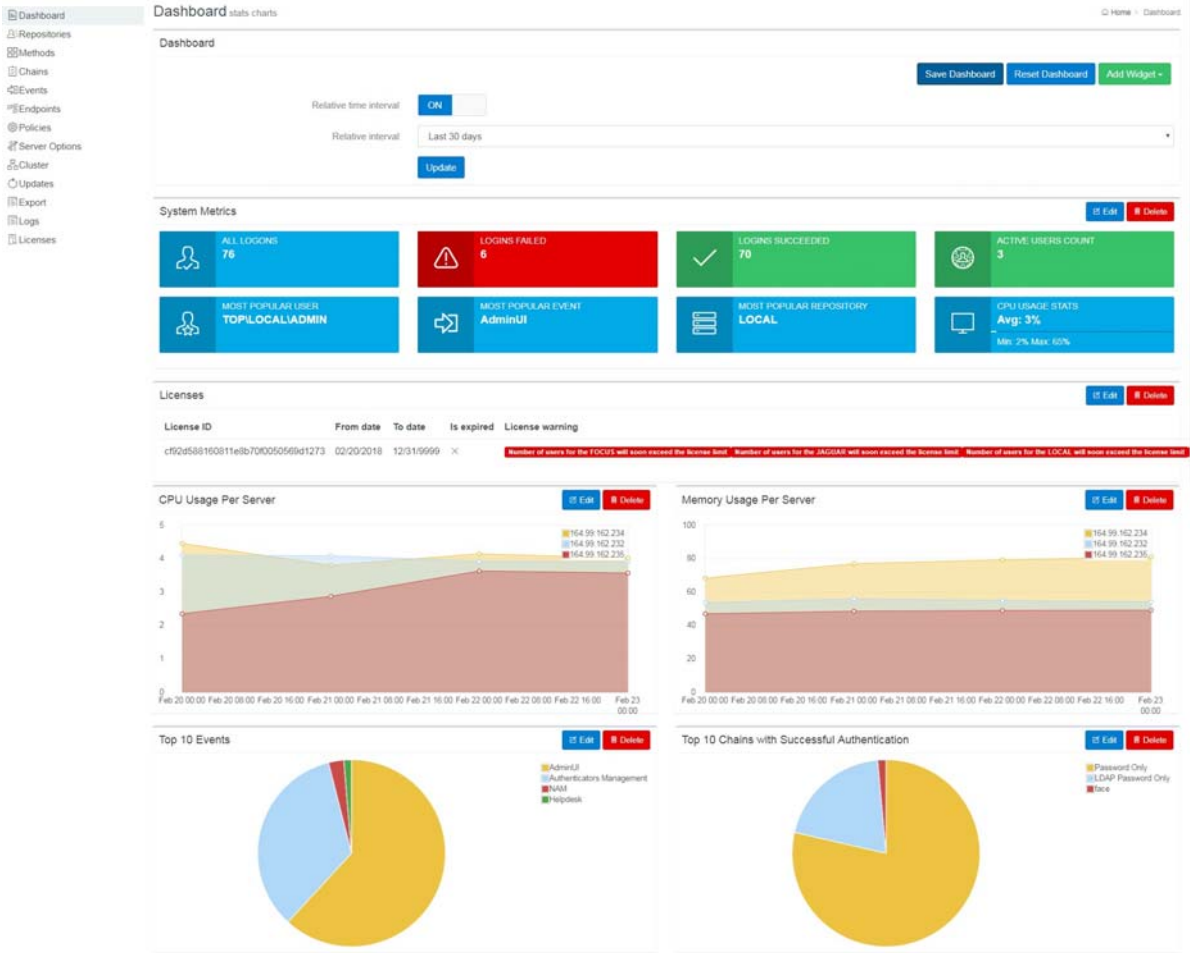
This section contains the following sections:

- Chapter 3, “Managing Dashboard,” on page 29
- Chapter 4, “Adding a Repository,” on page 37
- Chapter 5, “Configuring Methods,” on page 49
- Chapter 6, “Creating a Chain,” on page 89
- Chapter 7, “Configuring Events,” on page 93
- Chapter 8, “Managing Endpoints,” on page 103
- Chapter 9, “Configuring Policies,” on page 105
- Chapter 10, “Configuring the Server Options,” on page 135
- Chapter 11, “Adding a License,” on page 137
- Chapter 12, “Exporting and Importing the Database,” on page 139
- Chapter 13, “Adding a Report,” on page 141
- Chapter 14, “Enrolling the Authentication Methods,” on page 149
- Chapter 15, “Sample Configurations,” on page 151

3 Managing Dashboard

After you login into the Advanced Authentication Administration console, the Dashboard is displayed. Dashboard contains widgets that you can add or customize to view a graphical representation of data. The information in the Dashboard helps administrators to track memory utilization, tenant information, successful or failed logins, and so forth.

You can view the Dashboard for all the tenants or specific tenants.



You can perform the following to manage the Dashboard:

- Add widgets
- Customize Dashboard
- Update Dashboard
- Customize the Default Widgets
- Export Widgets

Adding Widgets

To add widgets, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Add widget** in the top-right corner of the **Dashboard** screen.
2. Select the widget from the list that you want to add to the dashboard.
3. Specify the appropriate details for the widget in the **Add Widget** screen.
4. Click **OK**.

You can add the following types of widgets:

- “Pie Chart” on page 30
- “Stacked Chart” on page 30
- “Activity Stream” on page 30
- “Enroll Activity Stream” on page 30
- “Users” on page 31
- “Authenticators” on page 31
- “Licenses” on page 31
- “Event Count Line Chart” on page 31
- “Events Count Line Chart Grouped by Field” on page 31
- “Distinct Events Count Line Chart” on page 31
- “Distinct Events Count Line Chart Grouped by Field” on page 32

Pie Chart

This widget displays the information collected on a specific parameter and represents information in the Pie chart format. You can also sort the parameter is ascending and descending order.

Stacked Chart

This widget displays a stacked bar chart that classifies and compares different categories of **Field 1** and **Field 2** parameters to track the maximum and minimum number of logons. X-axis represents categories of the **Field 2** parameter. Y-axis represents logon count. Segments in each vertical bar represents categories of **Field 1** parameter. Different colors are used to depict different categories and label for each category is displayed in upper-right corner of the widget.

Activity Stream

This widget displays information about user, tenant, chain, method used for authentication, and the result.

Enroll Activity Stream

This widget displays information about enrolled users: last log on time, tenant, user, method used for authentication, and event type.

Users

This widget displays information about the enrolled users: tenant name, user name, enrollment status and last log on time.

Authenticators

This widget displays information about the enrolled authenticators: tenant name, user name, event category, method, comment and owner of the account.

Licenses

This widget displays information about the license id, license validity dates (such as From and To dates), license expire status and license warnings (regarding license expiry, exceed in user count)

Event Count Line Chart

This widget tracks and displays logon count of all events in the appliance. The X-axis (horizontal) represents time and Y-axis (vertical) represents logon count. Each data point on the chart represents numbers of user logged on at a specific time. All the data points are plotted and connected with a line to track the maximum and minimum number of logons.

Events Count Line Chart Grouped by Field

This widget tracks and displays logon count of specific parameter. The X-axis (horizontal) represents time and Y-axis (vertical) represents logon count. Data points of different colors represent specific category of the selected parameter. The label for each category is displayed in upper-right corner of the widget. All the data points are plotted and connected with a line to track the maximum and minimum number of logons.

Distinct Events Count Line Chart

This widget tracks and displays distinct count of all categories in the selected parameter (Distinct values by field). X-axis (horizontal) represents time and Y-axis (vertical) represents distinct logon count. Each data point on the chart represents unique logon count at a specific time. All the data points are plotted and connected with a line to track the maximum and minimum number of distinct logons.

For example: If the Distinct events count line chart widget is customized as follows:

- **Interval** set to **1 hour**.
- **Distinct values by field** is set to **User name**.

The widget displays number of unique users logged in to all events for the time duration of 1 hour.

Distinct Events Count Line Chart Grouped by Field

This widget displays and classifies distinct logon count of each event. The X-axis (horizontal) represents time and Y-axis (vertical) represents distinct logon count. Each data point on the chart represents unique logon count of particular event at a specific time. All the data points are plotted and connected with a line to track the maximum and minimum number of distinct logons to particular event.

Customizing Dashboard

You can customize the Dashboard by moving the widgets or deleting the unused widgets.

To move the widgets, click on the widget and the drag icon appears. You can then drag and drop the widget to the desired location of the Dashboard.

To delete unused widgets, click **Delete** on the top of each widget.

After customizing the dashboard, click **Save Dashboard** on the upper-right corner of the **Dashboard** screen.

Updating Dashboard to View Real Time or Historical Data

You can update Dashboard to view the data based on the time interval or historical data.

Viewing Dashboard based on Time Interval

To view records based on real time interval, perform the following steps:

1. Set **Relative time interval** to **ON** in the **Dashboard** section.
2. Select the time interval from **Relative interval**. By default, time interval is set to **Last 15 minutes**.
3. Click **Update**.

Viewing Dashboard for Previous Records

To view previous records, perform the following steps:

1. Set **Relative time interval** to **OFF** in the **Dashboard** section.
2. Select the **Date range**.
3. Click **Update**.

Customizing the Default Widgets

To customize the widget, click **Edit** and select the appropriate filters. You can edit the widget title and customize the display based on the following filter factors:

- **Event type**: Select preferred event type. Options available are **All logon events**, **Failed logon events** and **Successful logon events**.
- **Interval**: Select Time interval.
- **Size**: Select number of records.

- **Sort**: Select sorting order. Options available are ascending or descending order.
- **Field**: Select the parameter based on which the data must be collected to display on the widget. Options available are **Event Name**, **Chain Name**, **Method Name**, **Endpoint Name** and so on.
- **Users**: Select specific user.
- **Events**: Select specific event.
- **Chains**: Select specific chain.

Following are the default widgets when you login. You can edit these widgets according to your need:

- “Server Metrics” on page 33
- “CPU and Memory Usage Per Server” on page 34
- “Tenants” on page 34
- “Authentications” on page 34
- “Logons Per Result” on page 34
- “Total Users” on page 34
- “Total Users Per Event” on page 34
- “Activity Stream” on page 34
- “Successful/Failed Logons” on page 34
- “Top Events With Successful Logon Per Chain” on page 34
- “Top Events With Failed Logon Per Method” on page 34
- “Top 10 Events” on page 34
- “Top 10 chains With Successful Result” on page 35
- “Top 10 Servers” on page 35
- “Top 10 Tenants” on page 35
- “Top 10 Repositories” on page 35
- “Top 5 Events for Logons” on page 35
- “Top 5 Users for Logons” on page 35
- “Top 10 Users With Failed Logon” on page 35
- “Top 10 Users” on page 35
- “Top 10 Methods With Failed Result” on page 35

Server Metrics

This widget displays statistics about user’s login, popularity and so on. The following section defines each server metric:

- **All Logons**: Total number of logins.
- **Failed Login**: Total number of failed logins by the users.
- **Succeeded Login**: Total number of successful logins by the users.
- **Active Users Count:** The number of active users.
- **Most Popular User**: The user that has used the console most.
- **Most Popular Event**: The event that users have used the most.
- **Most Popular Repo**: The repository that users have used the most.
- **CPU Usage Stats**: The average percentage of CPU usage.

CPU and Memory Usage Per Server

These widgets display information about percentage of CPU and memory usage of server for the set time interval. These widgets display average CPU and memory usage.

Tenants

This widget displays information about the tenants and their login.

Authentications

This widget displays the total logon count for time interval.

Logons Per Result

This widget displays two lines: one for successful logons and one for failed logons.

Total Users

This widget displays the total number of logged in users for time interval.

Total Users Per Event

This widget displays the total number of logged in users for each event.

Activity Stream

This widget displays information about user, tenant, chain, method used for authentication, and the result.

Successful/Failed Logons

This widget displays information about the successful or failed users login.

Top Events With Successful Logon Per Chain

This widget displays the top events based on the successful logon for each chain.

Top Events With Failed Logon Per Method

This widget displays the top events based on the failed logon for each chain.

Top 10 Events

This widget displays the top ten events the user has performed.

Top 10 chains With Successful Result

This widget displays the top ten chains the user has successfully authenticated with.

Top 10 Servers

This widget displays the top ten servers the user has used to authenticate.

Top 10 Tenants

This widget displays the top ten tenants.

Top 10 Repositories

This widget displays the top ten repositories.

Top 5 Events for Logons

This widget displays the top five events for login.

Top 5 Users for Logons

This widget displays the top five users for login.

Top 10 Users With Failed Logon

This widget displays the top ten users who have failed in the login attempt.

Top 10 Users

This widget displays the top ten users.

Top 10 Methods With Failed Result

This widget displays the top ten methods with failed authentication results.

Exporting Widgets

When you export a widget, Advanced Authentication creates a copy of the selected widget in the **Reports** section. You must navigate to **Reports** page to download the exported file on your local drive.

To export a widget, perform the following steps:

1. Select the preferred widget on the **Dashboard** page.
2. Click **Export** and select preferred format. Formats available are:
   - .csv
   - .json

3 Click **Reports**.

4 Click the exported file name in the **Exported reports** section, to download on the local drive.

4 Adding a Repository

A repository is a central location where the user's data is stored. Advanced Authentication uses the repository only to retrieve the user information and configurations in Advanced Authentication do not affect the repository. The authentication templates are stored inside the appliance and are fully encrypted.

Advanced Authentication supports any LDAP compliant directory such as Active Directory Domain Services, NetIQ eDirectory, Active Directory Lightweight Directory Services, OpenLDAP, and OpenDJ. Advanced Authentication also supports the MSSQL database.

When you add a new repository, you can match the users in the repository to the authentication chains. You require only the read permission to access a repository.

You can add the following repositories:

- Any LDAP repository
- SQL database
- External repository

Adding an LDAP Repository

To add a repository, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Repositories > Add**.
2. Select an applicable repository type from the **LDAP type** list. The options are:
   - **AD** for Active Directory Domain Services
   - **AD LDS** for Active Directory Lightweight Domain Services
   - **eDirectory** for NetIQ eDirectory
   - **Other** for OpenLDAP, OpenDJ and other types

   For **AD**, a repository name is automatically set to the NetBIOS name of the domain. For other LDAP repository types, you need to specify the name in **Name**.
3. Specify a container for the users in **Base DN**. When you select the **Subtree** option, Advanced Authentication performs a search for the users in all the child nodes. You can change the search scope by selecting the **Search one level only** option.
4. Specify a user account in **User** and specify the password of the user in **Password**. Ensure that the user's password has no expiry.
5. You can specify a container for the groups in **Group DN (optional)**. When you select the **Subtree** option, Advanced Authentication performs a search for the groups in all the child nodes. You can change the search scope by selecting the **Search one level only** option.
6. If you have selected **AD** as the **LDAP type**, you can perform the DNS discovery either automatically or manually.
   - Automatically Performing the DNS Discovery
   - Manual DNS Discovery

Automatically Performing the DNS Discovery

1. Select **DNS discovery** in the **LDAP servers** option.
2. Specify the **DNS zone**.
3. Specify the **Site name** (optional).
4. The **Use SSL** option is set to **OFF** by default. This indicates that the DNS discovery is done on a non-SSL mode for the port 389. An `_ldap` SRV record is retrieved from the DNS server when this option is disabled. For example, `_ldap._tcp.test2.local2`.

   To use SSL for DNS discovery on port 636, turn **Use SSL** to **ON**. An `_ldaps` SRV record is retrieved from the DNS server. For example, `_ldaps._tcp.test2.local2`. However, administrators must create the SRV record on the DNS server before using the SSL option.
5. Click **Perform DNS Discovery**.

   When the DNS discovery is done, the DNS servers list is updated every three hours.

Manually Performing the DNS Discovery

1. Select the **Manual setting** option in the **LDAP servers** option to add LDAP servers manually.
2. Click **Add server**. You can add the different servers in your network. The list is used as a pool of servers. Each time the connection is open, a random server is selected in the pool and unavailable servers are discarded.
3. Specify an LDAP server's **Address** and **Port**.
4. Turn **SSL** to **ON** to use SSL (if applicable).

   NOTE: If you specify an RODC (Read Only Domain Controller) in the LDAP server, the server uses this DC for read requests (get groups, get user info) and for logon requests (LDAP Password method and bind requests for Advanced Authentication LDAP user). These requests are redirected to a writable DC because RODC is installed in untrusted locations and does not have copies of the user's passwords. Therefore, if a writable DC is not available, Advanced Authentication will not be able to bind to the LDAP repository.

   To solve this issue, you must enable the password replication of a user account specified in Step 4. To do this, you must add the account to the **Allowed RODC Password Replication Group**.

   However, even when you enable such replication, users cannot use the LDAP Password method because user's passwords are not replicated. It is recommended not to replicate passwords of all the users. For more information, see the article Understanding "Read Only Domain Controller" authentication.

   NOTE: A Global Master must have connection to each of the LDAP servers. Therefore, in a data center with Global Master, you must have LDAP servers for all the used domains. In the secondary sites, ensure that the LDAP servers list contains only local LDAP servers to prevent an Advanced Authentication server to communicate to an LDAP Server that is located remotely. This is because communication to servers that are located far may result in delays.

   ---

5. Click the save icon next to server's credentials.

   Add additional servers (if applicable).

7 (Conditional) To configure custom attributes, expand Advanced Settings. The Advanced Settings are required for OpenDJ, OpenLDAP, and in some cases for NetIQ eDirectory.

8 If you have selected **AD** as the **LDAP type**, select **DNS discovery** to find LDAP servers automatically. Specify the **DNS zone** and **Site name** (optional) and click **Perform DNS Discovery**.

9 (Conditional) To configure custom attributes, expand Advanced Settings. The Advanced Settings are required for OpenDJ, OpenLDAP, and in some cases for NetIQ eDirectory.

10 Click **Save**.

NOTE: If you use NetIQ eDirectory with the option **Require TLS for Simple Bind with Password** enabled, you may get the error: `Can't bind to LDAP: confidentialityRequired`. To fix the error, you must either disable the option or do the following:

1. Click **LDAP > LDAP Options > Connections** in the NetIQ eDirectory Administration portal.
2. Set **Client Certificate** to **Not Requested**.
3. Set a correct port number and select **SSL** in the Repository settings.
4. Click **Sync now** with the added repository.

---

11 You can change the search scope and the **Group DN (optional)** functionality. In Advanced Authentication 5.2, you had to specify a common **Base DN** for users and groups.

12 To verify the synchronization of a repository, click **Edit** and you can view the information in **Last sync**.

13 Click **Full synchronization** to perform a complete synchronization of the repository.

NOTE: Full synchronization can be initiated only on the Global Master server.

Advanced Authentication performs automatic synchronization of modified objects (fast synchronization) on an hourly basis for AD repositories only. The fast synchronization is used to remove the users who are no longer a member of the groups that are assigned to the authentication chain of Advanced Authentication. It allows to free up their license.

The complete synchronization (**Full synchronization**) is performed on a weekly basis for all types of repositories.

NOTE: If an LDAP server is unavailable for 2.5 seconds, Advanced Authentication excludes it from the LDAP requests for a period of 3 minutes.

Advanced Settings

Advanced Settings allow you to customize attributes that Advanced Authentication reads from a repository. Click **+** to expand the **Advanced Settings**. The following list describes the different attributes in Advanced Settings:

- “User Lookup Attributes” on page 40
- “User Name Attributes” on page 40
- “User Mail Attributes” on page 40
- “User Cell Phone Attributes” on page 40
- “Group Lookup Attributes” on page 40
- “Group Name Attributes” on page 40
- “Verify SSL Certificate” on page 41
- “Enable Paged Search” on page 41
- “Enable Nested Groups Support” on page 42
- “Framed IPv4 Address Attribute” on page 42
- “Used Attributes” on page 42

User Lookup Attributes

Advanced Authentication validates the specified attributes for an entered user name.

For Active Directory (AD), the default attributes are `sAMAccountName` and `userPrincipalName`. For other repositories, `cn` is the default attribute.

User Name Attributes

Advanced Authentication shows a name from the first, non-empty specified field for an entered user name.

For AD, the default attributes are `sAMAccountName` and `userPrincipalName`. For other repositories, `cn` is the default attribute.

User Mail Attributes

Advanced Authentication validates the specified attributes to retrieve a user's email address.

Default attributes are `mail` and `otherMailbox`.

User Cell Phone Attributes

Advanced Authentication validates the specified attributes to retrieve a user's phone number. These attributes are used for methods such as SMS OTP, Voice, and Voice OTP. Previously, the first attribute of **User cell phone attributes** was used as a default attribute for authenticating with SMS OTP, Voice, and Voice OTP methods. Now, users can use different phone numbers for these methods. For example, Bob wants to authenticate with SMS OTP, Voice, and Voice OTP methods. He has a cell phone number, a home phone number, and an IP phone number and wants to use these numbers for each of these methods. He can define these phone numbers in the respective settings of these methods.

Default attributes: `mobile`, `otherMobile`.

NOTE: If you have multiple repositories, you must use the same configuration of **User cell phone attributes** for all the repositories.

Group Lookup Attributes

Advanced Authentication validates the specified attributes for an entered group name.

For Active Directory, the default attribute is `sAMAccountName`. For other repositories, `cn` is the default attribute.

Group Name Attributes

Advanced Authentication shows a name from the first, non-empty specified field for an entered group name.

For Active Directory, the default attribute is `sAMAccountName`. For other repositories, `cn` is the default attribute.

Advanced Authentication supports the RFC 2037 and RFC 2037 bis. RFC 2037 determines a standard LDAP schema and contains a `memberUid` attribute (POSIX style). RFC 2037 bis determines an updated LDAP schema and contains a member attribute. Active Directory, LDS, and eDir support RFC 2037 bis. OpenLDAP contains `posixAccount` and `posixGroup` that follows RFC 2037.

Advanced Authentication supports the following attributes for the Group Name attributes:

Attribute	Default Value	Value for the Repository
`User Object Class`	`user`	OpenDJ and OpenLDAP: `person`
`Group Object Class`	`group`	OpenDJ: `groupOfNames` OpenLDAP: `posixGroup`
`Group Member Attribute`	`member`	`OpenDJ: member` OpenLDAP: `memberUid`. If a required group contains `groupOfNames` class, disable **POSIX style groups**. If the group contains `posixGroup`, enable **POSIX style groups.** ◆ `User UID attribute` This attribute is available only when **POSIX style groups** is **ON**. Default value: `uid`.
`Object ID Attribute` This attribute is available only for **other LDAP type** only.	entryUUID	

NOTE: For information about the Logon filter settings (Legacy logon tag and MFA logon tag), see Configuring Logon Filter.

Verify SSL Certificate

Enable **Verify SSL Certificate** to ensure that the LDAP connection to appliance is secured with a valid self-signed SSL certificate. This helps to prevent any attacks on the LDAP connection and ensures safe authentication. Click **Browse** to browse the self-signed certificate.

Enable Paged Search

The **Enable paged search** option allows LDAP repositories to support paged search in which the repositories can retrieve a result of a query set in small portions. By default, this option is set to **ON**. For openLDAP (with file-based backend), the option must be set to **OFF.**

NOTE: You must not disable the option for Active Directory repositories. It can also affect the performance on other supported repositories such as NetIQ eDirectory.

Enable Nested Groups Support

This option allows you to enable or disable nested groups support. By default, the **Enable nested groups support** option is set to **ON.**

If **Enable nested groups support** option is set to **ON,** then Advanced Authentication will authenticate all the users of the group and its nested groups assigned to a chain. If **Enable nested groups support** option is set to **OFF,** then Advanced Authentication will authenticate only the members of the group assigned to the chain. The members of the nested groups cannot access the chain.

Consider there is a group by name **All Users** assigned to **SMS Authentication** chain and the **All Users** group has subgroups **Contractors** and **Suppliers.** When **Enable nested groups support** option is set to **ON,** then Advanced Authentication will authenticate **All Users** group and the nested groups **Contractors** and **Suppliers** for **SMS Authentication** chain. When the option is set to **OFF,** then Advanced Authentication will authenticate only the members of **All Users** group and the nested group members will not have access to **SMS Authentication** chain. This improves the login performance of the appliance.

Framed IPv4 Address Attribute

This attribute is applicable for the RADIUS Server event.

For Active Directory, when the **Framed IPv4 Address** is blank, the Advanced Authentication RADIUS server returns value of the `msRADIUSFramedIPAddress` attribute as `Framed-IP-Address` after you log in with the RADIUS event. When you specify any other attribute in **Framed IPv4 Address attribute**, then the value of the specified attribute is returned as the `Framed-IP-Address` instead of the `msRADIUSFramedIPAddress` attribute value. You can configure the `Framed-IP-Address` in **Active Directory Users and Computers** > **Dial-in** > **Assign Static IP Addresses** and click **Static IP Addresses**. It supports only IPv4.

For the other repositories, when the **Framed IPv4 Address** is blank, the Advanced Authentication RADIUS server returns value of the `radiusFramedIPAddress` attribute as `Framed-IP-Address` after you log in with the RADIUS event. When you specify any other attribute in **Framed IPv4 Address attribute**, then the value of the specified attribute is returned as the `Framed-IP-Address` instead of the `radiusFramedIPAddress` attribute value.

Used Attributes

The following table describes the attributes that the appliance uses in the supported directories.

Attribute Name	LDAP Name	Description	Type	Supported in Active Directory	Supported in LDS	Supported in eDirectory
CN (Common Name)	`CN`	An identifier of an object	String	?	?	?
Mobile	`Mobile`	A phone number of an object's cellular or mobile phone	Phone number	?	?	?
Email Address	`mail`	An email address of a user	Email address	?	?	?

Attribute Name	LDAP Name	Description	Type	Supported in Active Directory	Supported in LDS	Supported in eDirectory
User-Principal-Name (UPN)	`userPrincipalName`	An Internet based format login name for a user	String	?	?	?
SAM-Account-Name	`sAMAccountName`	The login name used to support clients and servers running earlier versions of operating systems such as Windows NT 4.0	String	?	×	×
GUID	`GUID`	An assured unique value for any object	Octet String	×	×	?
Object Class	`Object Class`	An unordered list of object classes	String	?	?	?
Member	`Member`	A list that indicates the objects associated with a group or list	String	?	?	?
User-Account-Control	`userAccountControl`	Flags that control the behavior of a user account	Enumeration	?	×	×
ms-DS-User-Account-Control-Computed	`msDS-User-Account-Control-Computed`	Flags that are similar to `userAccountControl`, but the attribute's value can contain additional bits that are not persisted	Enumeration	?	?	×
Primary-Group-ID	`primaryGroupID`	A relative identifier (RID) for the primary group of a user	Enumeration	?	×	×
Object-Guid	`objectGUID`	A unique identifier for an object	Octet String	?	?	×
object-Sid	`objectSid`	A Binary value that specifies the security identifier (SID) of the user	Octet String	?	?	×
Logon-Hours	`logonHours`	Hours that the user is allowed to logon to the domain	Octet String	?	×	×
USN-Changed	`uSNChanged`	An update sequence number (USN) assigned by the local directory for the latest change including creation	Interval	?	?	×

NOTE: The `sAMAccountName` and `userPrincipalName` attributes are supported only for AD DS repository. The Active Directory LDS and eDirectory repositories do not support the attributes.

LDAP Queries for Repository Sync

Active Directory DS and AD LDS Queries

1. Search users

```
(&(usnChanged>=217368)(&(objectClass=user)(|(cn=*)(sAMAccountName=*)(userPrincipal
Name=*))))
```

Requested attributes:

```
['objectSID', 'sAMAccountName', 'objectClass', 'logonHours', 'primaryGroupId',
'otherMobile', 'mobile', 'userAccountControl', 'cn', 'usnChanged',
'userPrincipalName', 'msDS-User-Account-Control-Computed', 'objectGUID', 'mail',
'otherMailbox', 'GUID']
```

2. Search groups

```
(&(usnChanged>=217368)(&(objectClass=group)(|(cn=*)(sAMAccountName=*))))
```

Requested attributes:

```
['objectSID', 'sAMAccountName', 'objectClass', 'logonHours', 'primaryGroupId',
'userAccountControl', 'cn', 'usnChanged', 'msDS-User-Account-Control-Computed',
'objectGUID', 'GUID']
```

eDirectory Queries

The queries are the same as for Active Directory DS and Active Directory LDS, except for 'usnChanged' (this filter is not used).

1. Search users

```
(&(objectClass=user)(|(cn=*)(sAMAccountName=*)(userPrincipalName=*)))
```

Requested attributes:

```
['objectSID', 'sAMAccountName', 'objectClass', 'logonHours', 'primaryGroupId',
'otherMobile', 'mobile', 'userAccountControl', 'cn', 'userPrincipalName', 'msDS-
User-Account-Control-Computed', 'objectGUID', 'mail', 'otherMailbox', 'GUID']
```

2. Search groups

```
(&(objectClass=group)(|(cn=*)(sAMAccountName=*)))
```

Requested attributes:

```
['objectSID', 'sAMAccountName', 'objectClass', 'logonHours', 'primaryGroupId',
'userAccountControl', 'cn', 'msDS-User-Account-Control-Computed', 'objectGUID',
'GUID']
```

LDAP Queries During Logon

For Active Directory LDS queries, the attributes are same as Active Directory DS except for the `objectSid` (the filter is not used in queries on membership in groups).

In the examples below, the username is pjones, base_dn is DC=company,DC=com

Active Directory DS and Active Directory LDS queries

1. Basic user information

```
(&(objectClass=user)(|(cn=pjones)(sAMAccountName=pjones)(userPrincipalName=pjones)
))
```

Requested attributes:

```
(&(objectClass=user)(objectGUID=\0f\d1\14\49\bc\cc\04\44\b7\bf\19\06\15\c6\82\55))
```

Requested attributes:

```
['otherMobile', 'GUID', 'userAccountControl', 'msDS-User-Account-Control-
Computed', 'mobile', 'primaryGroupId', 'cn', 'objectGUID', 'userPrincipalName',
'objectSID', 'mail', 'sAMAccountName', 'objectClass', 'logonHours',
'otherMailbox']
```

2. Group membership information for user

Active Directory specific query using objectSid filter:

```
(|(member=CN=pjones,CN=Users,DC=company,DC=com)(objectSid=S-1-5-21-3303523795-
413055529-2892985274-513))
```

Requested attributes:

```
['GUID', 'userAccountControl', 'msDS-User-Account-Control-Computed',
'primaryGroupId', 'objectGUID', 'cn', 'objectSID', 'objectClass',
'sAMAccountName', 'logonHours']
```

3. Iteratively query about each group received from above query

```
(member=CN=Performance Monitor Users,CN=Builtin,DC=company,DC=com)
```

Requested attributes:

```
['GUID', 'userAccountControl', 'msDS-User-Account-Control-Computed',
'primaryGroupId', 'objectGUID', 'cn', 'objectSID', 'objectClass',
'sAMAccountName', 'logonHours']
```

eDirectory Queries

Basic user information

```
(&(objectClass=user)(|(cn=pjones)(sAMAccountName=pjones)(userPrincipalName=pjones)
))
```

Requested attributes:

```
['otherMobile', 'GUID', 'userAccountControl', 'msDS-User-Account-Control-
Computed', 'mobile', 'primaryGroupId', 'cn', 'objectGUID', 'userPrincipalName',
'objectSID', 'mail', 'sAMAccountName', 'objectClass', 'logonHours',
'otherMailbox']
```

```
(&(objectClass=user)(GUID=\57\b6\c2\c1\b9\7f\4b\40\b9\70\5f\9a\1d\76\6c\d2))
```

Requested attributes:

```
['otherMobile', 'GUID', 'userAccountControl', 'msDS-User-Account-Control-
Computed', 'mobile', 'primaryGroupId', 'cn', 'objectGUID', 'userPrincipalName',
'objectSID', 'mail', 'sAMAccountName', 'objectClass', 'logonHours',
'otherMailbox']
```

Group membership information for user

```
(member=cn=pjones,o=AAF)
```

Requested attributes:

```
['GUID', 'userAccountControl', 'msDS-User-Account-Control-Computed',
'primaryGroupId', 'objectGUID', 'cn', 'objectSID', 'objectClass',
'sAMAccountName', 'logonHours']
```

Search groups

```
(&(objectClass=group)(GUID=<group_GUID>))
```

Requested attributes:

```
['cn', 'objectClass', 'GUID', 'loginDisabled', 'loginExpirationTime',
'lockedByIntruder', 'radiusFramedIPAddress']
```

Adding an SQL Database

You can add an MSSQL database to be consumed as a repository by Advanced Authentication. The following version of SQL servers are supported:

- Microsoft SQL Server 2016

To add an SQL database, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Repositories > Add SQL repo**.
2. Specify the following details of the SQL database:
   - **Name**: Name of the repository.
   - **Database type**: Select **MSSQL**.
   - **DB host**: IP address of the database host.
   - **DB name:** Name of the database.
   - **DB user**: Name of the database user.
   - **Password**: Password of the database.
   - **Table or view name**: Name of the table or view in the database.
   - **User's id column** and **User's id type**: User's id column and id type in the database.
   - **User's name column** and **User's name type**: The username column and the type in which the name is specified.
   - **User's phone column**, and **User's email column**: The phone and email column in the database.

IMPORTANT

- The LDAP Password method is not applicable for the users in SQL repository. The Password method for the users is not enrolled automatically and can be enrolled manually by the Helpdesk administrator only.
- You must disable the **Ask credentials of management user** in the Helpdesk Options policy for the SQL repository. This enables the helpdesk administrator to set an authenticator for a user, without getting authenticated with the user's password on the **User to Manage** page of the Helpdesk portal.
- The SQL repository supports auto enrollment of Email OTP, SMS OTP, and Voice OTP methods. If you use only these methods, you can create a chain with one or some of these methods. You do not need the Helpdesk administrator's assistance for the enrollment of these methods. It is not recommended to use a single factor chain with only one of these methods as it is not secure.

Adding an External Repository

You can add an external repository that will act as a Repo Agent. This agent will act as an intermediate between the LDAP repository and Advanced Authentication. This agent will take care of all the synchronizations of the repositories even when the Advanced Authentication is hosted on cloud.

To add a Repo Agent, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Repositories > Add External repo**.
2. Specify the following details of the external repository:
   - **Name**: Name of the repository.

     NOTE: Name of the repository must be the same as what is defined in the Repo Agent. The name of the repository must not contain spaces.

   - **Username**: Name of the user using the repository.
   - **Password**: Password of the repository.

     NOTE: The **Username** and **Password** are defined in the `secret.json` file of the Repo Agent. For information about the `secret.json` file, see Setting Up the Config Folder of Repo Agent.

3. Add external server configurations:
   - **3a** Click **Add Server.**
   - **3b** Specify the IP address of the Repo Agent in **Address**.
   - **3c** Specify the port number of the server in **Port**. For example, 9443.
   - **3d** Click the save icon next to the server credentials.
4. Click **Choose File** to upload the CA certificate for the agent.

   For more information about uploading the CA certificates, see "Setting Up the Repo Agent for Certificates and Services" in the *Advanced Authentication - Repo Agent* guide.
5. Click **Save**.

Local Repository

The Local repository contains the Advanced Authentication server data. You can manage users and set roles for users in the local repository.

To edit a local repository, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Edit** in the **LOCAL** section of **Repositories**.
2. In the **Global Roles** tab, you can manage the Helpdesk administrators as **ENROLL ADMINS,** Advanced Authentication administrators as **FULL ADMINS**, and an additional privilege to share the authenticators to the Helpdesk administrators as **SHAREAUTH ADMINS**.

   By default, there are no ENROLL ADMINS and the account LOCAL\ADMIN is specified as FULL ADMIN. You can change this by adding the user names from local or the repositories in **Members**.

NOTE: By default the helpdesk administrator cannot share the authenticators. Only when the helpdesk administrator is added in **Members** in the **SHAREAUTH ADMINS**, the helpdesk administrator will be able to share the authenticators. However, the **Enable sharing of authenticators in** "Authenticator Management Options Policy" policy must be enabled to share authenticators.

3 Click **Save**.

4 In the **Users** tab, you can manage the local users.

To add the new local account, click **Add** and specify the required information of the user.

5 In the **Settings** tab, you can edit the name of the Local repository.

5 Configuring Methods

A method is a way of authenticating the identity of an individual who attempts to access an endpoint. Advanced Authentication provides several such methods.

To configure an authentication method for Advanced Authentication, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Methods**.
2. Click the **Edit** icon next to the authentication method.
3. Make the required changes.
4. Click **Save**.

You can configure the following methods in Advanced Authentication:

- BankID
- Bluetooth
- Card
- Email OTP
- Emergency Password
- Facial Recognition
- FIDO 2.0
- Fingerprint
- LDAP Password
- OATH OTP
- Password
- PKI
- RADIUS Client
- Security Questions
- Smartphone
- SMS OTP
- Swisscom Mobile ID
- FIDO U2F
- Voice
- Voice OTP
- Web Authentication Method
- Windows Hello

NOTE: Configurations that have been set by a top administrator for a particular method are grayed out. The configurations are not displayed, if the configurations are hidden by the top administrator.

Customizing Method Names

You can translate the method name to a preferred language in the **Custom names** section. The translated method name will appear in the following portals, clients, and events:

- Portals: Administration, Helpdesk, Self-Service, and Reporting
- Clients: Windows, Linux PAM, and Mac OS X
- Events: OSP, RADIUS, and custom events.

To customize and translate the method name to a specific language, perform the following steps:

1. Open the method for which you want to localize the method name.
2. Specify the method name in a specific language field in the **Custom names** section.
3. Click **Save**.

Configuring Tenancy Settings

After configuring the authentication methods, you must create an authentication chain and map the configured methods to the chain. You can also create a chain with a single method. For example, you can create different authentication chains for an organization that has two departments, IT and Finance. For the IT department, you can create a chain with **Password** and **Smartphone** methods. For the Finance department, a chain with only the **Fingerprint** method can be created. For more information about creating chains, see "Creating a Chain".

The methods do not appear in the Self-Service portal until you include them in a chain, and link that chain to an event.

BankID

Advanced Authentication provides the BankID method that facilitates users to authenticate with their personal identification number. Advanced Authentication supports both the desktop and the mobile versions of BankID. In this method, the user must configure the BankID app with the personal identification number, activation, and security code. The security code is mapped with the personal identification number.

NOTE: The user must ensure to set the security code with six digits in non-sequential format (for example: 221144) in the BankID app.

While enrolling the user, the specified identification number is saved as a template in the Advanced Authentication database. This method allows the users to get authenticated by specifying their secret code configured on the BankID app.

When a user wants to authenticate on an endpoint such as a laptop or a website with the BankID method. In this scenario, the authentication flow is as follows:

1. When the authentication request is initiated, the endpoint contacts the Advanced Authentication server.
2. The Advanced Authentication server validates the user's credentials.
3. After validating the credentials, the Advanced Authentication server sends a request to the BankID app.

4 User opens the BankID app, specifies the **Security Code**.
   - Click **Identify** on the Mobile app.
   - Click **Verify my identity** on the Desktop app.
5 The Security code is sent to the BankID server to validate.
6 The BankID server validates the authentication and the endpoint gets authenticated.

To configure the BankID method, perform the following steps:

NOTE: Ensure that you have the BankID client SSL certificate as a pre-requisite.

---

1 Click **Browse** then select the client SSL certificate from the local drive.

   The certificate must be in `PKCS12` format.
2 Specify **Private key password**.
3 Set **Enable Test Mode** to **ON**, to allow the user to test the authenticator with valid test BankID.

   If you set this option to **OFF**, users must use valid production BankID to enroll the authenticator.
4 Click **Save**.

Bluetooth

In the **Bluetooth** method, you can enroll your smartphone or a mobile device. For example, Bob wants to be authenticated through the Bluetooth method. He enrolls the Bluetooth method on the Advanced Authentication Self-Service portal. He can get authenticated with the Bluetooth method only when his smartphone is in the range.

By default, the **Enable reaction on device removal** option is enabled. When this option is enabled and a user tries to logs in to Windows using Bluetooth, Windows gets locked automatically in the following scenario:

- When the Bluetooth device is disabled
- When the Bluetooth device is out of range

NOTE: It is recommended to combine the Bluetooth method with another authentication method in a chain to enhance the security.

Card

The **Card** authentication happens when a user places a contactless card on a card reader.

Advanced Authentication supports the Microsoft policy Interactive logon: Smart card removal behavior that allows you to specify an action on the card event. You can configure the policy to perform a force log off or lock a user session when a user places a card on the reader. Only Microsoft Windows supports this policy.

By default, the **Enable Tap&Go** option is disabled. When this option is disabled, a card must be placed on the reader when a user logs in. When the user removes the card from the reader, the Windows Client runs an action that is specified in the Interactive logon: Smart card removal behavior

policy. When you set this option to **ON**, users can tap a card to perform the following actions (depending on the Interactive logon: Smart card removal behavior policy) without keeping their cards on the reader:

- To log in
- To lock a session
- To log off

NOTE: The policy is supported for Microsoft Windows only and it is not supported for the PKI authenticators.

When you enable Single-sign on (SSO) for Remote Desktop, the Interactive logon: Smart card removal behavior policy (https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/windows/security/threat-protection/security-policy-settings/interactive-logon-smart-card-removal-behavior) is ignored. You need to disable SSO to make it working.

Email OTP

In the **Email OTP** authentication method, the server sends an email with a one-time password (OTP) to the user's e-mail address. The user must specify the OTP on the device where the user needs to get authenticated. It is a best practice to use the Email OTP authentication method with other methods such as **Password** or **LDAP Password** to achieve multi-factor authentication and to prohibit malicious users from sending SPAM mails to a user's email box with authentication requests.

To configure the Email OTP method, specify the following details:

Parameter	Description
OTP period	Lifetime of an OTP token in seconds. The default OTP period is 120 seconds. Maximum value for the OTP period is 360 seconds.
OTP format	Length of an OTP token. The default value is 6 digits.
Subject	Subject of the mail.
Format	Format of an email message. The default format is **Plain Text**. The **HTML** format allows to use embedded images. You can specify an **HTML** format of the message in **HTML**.
Body	For the **Plain Text** format, you can specify the following variables: ◆ {user}: Username. ◆ {endpoint}: Device that a user authenticates to. ◆ {event}: Name of the event where the user is trying to authenticate to. ◆ {otp}: One-Time-Password to be sent to the user.
Allow to override email address	Option that allows to prevent users from providing an email address that is not registered in the LDAP repository. The option is set to **ON** by default. Set to **OFF** to prevent users to specify a different email address during the enrollment.

Parameter	Description
Allow user enrollment without e-mail	Option to configure settings for the user to enroll the Email OTP authenticator without an email in the repository. Set this option to **OFF** to ensure that a user does not enroll the Email OTP authenticator without an email. The user gets an error message that you can specify in **Error message**. Set this option to **ON** to allow the user to enroll the Email OTP authenticator without an email.

Emergency Password

The **Emergency Password** method facilitates the use of a temporary password for users if they lose a smartcard or forget their smartphone. Only a helpdesk administrator can enroll the Emergency Password method for users.

WARNING: An administrator can misuse this method by trying to access other user's account. Full administrator must be vigilant to select the right helpdesk administrators.

To configure the Emergency Password method, specify the following details:

Parameter	Description
Minimum password length	The length of the password must be at least five characters long.
Password age (days)	The validity period of a password. The default value is 3 days.
Max logins	The maximum number of login attempts that a user can perform before the password gets expired. The default value is 10.
Complexity requirements	Set to **ON** to enforce users creating a complex password. Password must meet the following requirements: ◆ Contains at least one uppercase character ◆ Contains at least one lowercase character ◆ Contains at least one digit ◆ Contains at least one special character
Allow change options during enrollment	When set to **ON**, this option allows a helpdesk administrator to set **Start date**, **End date**, and **Maximum logons** manually in the Helpdesk portal. This manual configuration overrides the settings in the **Emergency Password** method.

Facial Recognition

Advanced Authentication provides advanced biometric authentication with the Facial Recognition method. This method allows users to get automatically authenticated by presenting their face. The image of the face is captured by an integrated or external camera and recorded by the Microsoft API server, when the user enrolls the method. When the user tries to authenticate on an application, the recorded image is compared with the actual image. If the images match, the user is authenticated.

IMPORTANT: It is recommended to combine the Facial recognition method with another method in a chain to enhance security.

You can configure the following settings for the Facial recognition method:

- "Generating Access Key and Endpoint URL" on page 54
- "Configuring Facial Recognition Method" on page 54

WARNING: To use the Facial recognition method for OAuth 2.0 and SAML 2.0 integrations, you must have the Advanced Authentication Device Service installed.

Generating Access Key and Endpoint URL

Before you configure the Facial Recognition method, you must generate the **Access Key** and **Endpoint URL** from the Microsoft Cognitive Services (https://azure.microsoft.com/en-in/services/cognitive-services/).

To generate the Access Key and Endpoint URL, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Get API** against **Face API**.
2. Agree to the license agreement.
3. Login with the preferred credentials.
4. Capture the **Access Key** and **Endpoint URL** for the Face API.

   While generating the access key for the Face API, two keys are displayed. You can use anyone of the two keys.

Configuring Facial Recognition Method

To configure the Facial Recognition method, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Methods > Facial Recognition**.
2. Specify the **Access Key** that you have generated in the Microsoft Cognitive Services. This key is used while authenticating the user.

   For information about how to generate the Access Key in the Microsoft Cognitive Services, see "Generating Access Key and Endpoint URL".
3. Specify the **Endpoint URL**. This URL is location based.

NOTE

- For a better quality of recognition, you must use cameras with a high definition of 720p and above.

- During enrollment, the captured images are placed on Microsoft servers and Microsoft Cognitive Services returns only the Face ID to Advanced Authentication. The Advanced Authentication stores this Face ID as enrolled authenticator. Therefore, when you change to another Access Key, the related enrollments are lost.
- This method is not supported for cache of Windows Client, Mac OS X Client, and Linux PAM Client.

FIDO 2.0

The FIDO 2.0 method facilitates users to use the devices that comply with FIDO standards for authenticating to any web-based environment. The devices can be built-into the platform or external devices connected through USB. The FIDO 2.0 method uses the Web Authentication (WebAuthn) API, and Client to Authenticator Protocol (CTAP). The WebAuthn enables strong authentication with public key cryptography and allows password-less authentication.

NOTE: Advanced Authentication FIDO 2.0 method supports the following:

- Firefox and Google Chrome browsers with the U2F device
- Microsoft Edge browser with Windows Hello authentication

While you use Google Chrome browser, it is required to set a valid domain name for your Advanced Authentication server rather than an IP address.

If users have enrolled the FIDO 2.0 method using the Windows Hello in Microsoft Edge 17 or earlier supported browser versions then they must authenticate using the same browser. After upgrading to the latest version of Edge that supports the FIDO 2.0 standards, users must re-enroll the FIDO 2.0 method.

For more information about the WebAuthn and FIDO 2.0 authenticators, see these articles: Web Authentication (https://w3c.github.io/webauthn/), Web API for FIDO 2.0 (https://www.w3.org/Submission/2015/SUBM-fido-web-api-20151120/), and Microsoft Web authentication (https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/microsoft-edge/dev-guide/device/web-authentication).

An Example of Authenticating with the FIDO 2.0 Method

Thomas, an end user, has enrolled the FIDO 2.0 method in the Advanced Authentication Self-Service portal by using the FIDO compliant U2F token. He wants to authenticate to the `mycompany.com` website. When he opens the browser and follows the prompts to access the website. Then, he is required to touch the token when there is a flash. Thomas is validated with the device and gets authenticated to `mycompany.com`.

Fingerprint

The **Fingerprint** method is one of the strongest biometric authentication methods of Advanced Authentication. Users can authenticate with methods such as **Password** (something they know) and **Fingerprint** (something they are) for multi-factor authentication. Users need to place their finger on a fingerprint scanner to enroll and authenticate.

To configure the Fingerprint method, perform the following steps:

1. Set the **Similarity score threshold** by moving the slider to the desired score.

NOTE: Default and recommended value for **Similarity score threshold** is 50. Reducing the score may result in different fingerprints getting validated.

2 Select the number of fingers that a user must enroll.

It is recommended to specify a number that is more than 1 because if a finger is injured, the user can use the other enrolled finger.

NOTE: If you want to allow the use of multi-finger reader for enrollment, ensure to select the number of fingers to be enrolled as 4, 6, 8, or 10.

3 Select the number of scans required for enrollee's each finger.

NOTE: To improve the quality of the fingerprint enrollment, it is recommended to have multiple captures. The total number of captures including all the enrolled fingers must not exceed 25.

4 Set **Enable multi-finger reader to enroll** to **ON**, to allow users to enroll the Fingerprint method using the Green Bit DactyScan84c multi-finger reader. Users can set **Use multi-finger reader for enrollment** to **ON** and enroll with the multi-finger reader on the Self-Service portal. The Green Bit DactyScan84c device can scan one of the following fingers combination at a time:

- Four fingers of the right hand
- Four fingers of the left hand
- Two thumbs

To enforce the users to scan fingers using the Green Bit DactyScan84c reader, set **Force to use multi-finger reader** to **ON**.

5 Set **Specify fingers during enrollment** to **ON**, if you want to enforce selected fingers for a user to enroll.

6 Select the preferred fingers to enroll from the **Selected fingers** list.

7 Set **Enable Duress finger configuration** to **ON**, to allow users to assign one of the enrolled fingers as duress. In case of emergency or under a threat, user can authenticate with the duress finger. Authentication with the duress finger triggers an alert notification to the configured email address and phone number.

In the **Alert Configuration** section, specify the following details to configure the alert notification that is to be sent to the preferred email address and phone number:

Table 5-1

Parameter	Description
Email Alert Settings	
Email Recipient	The email address of recipient to whom you want to send the email alert.
Email Alert Subject	Subject of the email alert.
Format	Format of email alert. **Plain Text** is the default format. Other available option is **HTML**. If you select **HTML** format, specify the message in **HTML**.
Email Alert Body	Body of email alert. You can specify the following variables: ◆ {user}: Username. ◆ {endpoint}: Device that a user authenticates to. ◆ {event}: Name of the event where the user is trying to authenticate to.
SMS Alert Settings	
SMS Recipient	Phone number of recipient to whom you want to send the SMS alert.
SMS Alert Body	Text in the SMS that is sent to the recipient. You can specify the following variables: ◆ {user}: Username. ◆ {endpoint}: Device that a user authenticates to. ◆ {event}: Name of the event where the user is trying to authenticate to.

8 Click **Save.**

NOTE: Ensure that you configure the Mail Sender and SMS Sender policies with the sender details that are required to send an alert.

Example 1: Enrolling Multiple Fingers and Authenticating with One of the Enrolled Fingers

Consider Thomas, an administrator has performed the following steps to enforce users to enroll the Fingerprint method using the Greenbit DactyScan84c device. Users can authenticate to Linux workstation with the Fingerprint method.

1. Set **Force to use multi-finger reader** to **ON** in the Fingerprint method.
2. Created a chain with the Fingerprint method and added another preferred method such as LDAP password or Password.
3. Mapped the chain to the **Linux Logon** event.

Paul, an end user, logs in to the Self Service portal and clicks on the Fingerprint icon. He selects the four fingers of Right hand and enrolls using the Green Bit DactyScan device. After enrollment, Paul authenticates to his Linux workstation with the Nitgen device using one of the enrolled fingers. He gets authenticated successfully.

Example 2: Authenticating with a Duress Finger During an Emergency Situation

Consider Thomas, an administrator has performed the following steps to assign an enrolled finger as duress:

1. Set **Enable Duress finger configuration** to **ON** in the Fingerprint method.
2. Configured **Alert Configuration** with the alert notification text, mail address and phone number of a network security officer to send email and SMS.
3. Created a chain with the Fingerprint method along with preferred methods such as **LDAP password** and **Password**. Assigned the chain to **Networks** group.
4. Mapped the chain to the **Linux logon** event. Mail server is hosted on the Linux workstation.

Paul, a network staff, logs in to the Self Service portal and clicks on the Fingerprint icon. He enrolls the middle, index, ring and little fingers of the left hand. Later, he selects **Left index** from **Assign Duress Finger** drop down.

Assume, on an unfortunate day, a miscreant forcibly enters the organization and threatens Paul to authenticate to the Linux workstation. In this situation, Paul can use the duress finger (Left index finger) for authentication which triggers an alert notification to configured security personnel, who will take the necessary action.

LDAP Password

In the **LDAP Password** method, the Advanced Authentication client retrieves password that is stored in the user repository from the Advanced Authentication server.

If you do not include the LDAP Password method in a chain, you will be prompted to perform a synchronization. When you set **Save LDAP password** to **ON**, the prompt is displayed only for the first time until the password is changed or reset. If you set this option to **OFF**, a prompt for synchronization is displayed each time.

NOTE: You can bypass the password synchronization dialog after the password change or reset by configuring the Password Filter. For configuring the Password Filter, see“Password Filter for Active Directory”.

To configure LDAP Password method, perform the following steps:

- Set **Enable SSPR integration** to **ON** if you want to enable the Self Service Password Reset integration for Advanced Authentication web portals.
- Specify the **SSPR link text**. This link is displayed on the login page where user specifies the LDAP Password.
- Specify the **SSPR URL**. This URL points to the Self Service Password Reset portal.

LDAP password is stored on the Advanced Authentication server at the following two places:

1. User data: It is used for OS logon (Windows Client, Mac OS X Client, and Linux PAM Client) and is stored when **Save LDAP password** option in **LDAP Password** method is set to **ON**.
2. LDAP password authenticator: It is used while using cached logon. The password is stored when the **Enable local caching** option is set to **ON** in the Cache Options Policy.

When the **Enable cached logon** option is set to **OFF** (default behavior), the Advanced Authentication server always contacts the LDAP server to validate the user password. It may cause performance issues. When you set this option to **ON**, during authentication user specified password is validated with password stored (cached) in the Advanced Authentication server.

If the user password does not match with the stored password or password is not stored on the Advanced Authentication server, then cached value gets reset and Advanced Authentication server contacts the LDAP server to validate the user password.

If the user specified password matches the cached password, the Advanced Authentication server validates user password with LDAP server in the background. If the validation failed, the password stored on Advanced Authentication Server gets reset, so next login will be without cache.

NOTE: The **Enable cached logon** option works only if any one of the following setting is set to **ON**:

- **Save LDAP password** in the **LDAP Password** method.
- **Enable local caching** in the **Cache Options** policy.

OATH OTP

OATH (Initiative for Open Authentication) is an industry-wide collaboration to develop an open reference architecture using open standards to promote the adoption of strong authentication using OTP.

Advanced Authentication supports the following two different types of OATH OTP:

- HOTP
- TOTP

You can configure the following settings for the OATH methods:

- Importing PSKC or CSV Files
- CSV File Format To Import OATH Compliant Tokens

HOTP

HOTP is a counter based one time password. To configure the HOTP authenticator, you can specify the following parameters:

- **OTP format**: The number of digits in the OTP token. The default value is 6 digits. The value must be the same as of the tokens you are using.
- **OTP window**: The size of OTP window defines number of valid OTP for authentication. When the counters are out of sync, this parameter determines the difference between the counter on the token and the server. Based on the difference, the server can recalculate the next OTP value to validate with the OTP received from the token. The server stores the last counter value (C) for

which the user has provided a valid password. While verifying a new OTP from the token, the server validates C+1, C+2... until one of the OTP is identical, or till C+w, where w represents the OTP window.

You can use the HOTP token such as Yubikey token to access not only Advanced Authentication, but also some websites or third-party services. After each use or when users press the token button accidentally, the HOTP counter on the token is increased by 1. Therefore, the counter will be out of sync between the token and Advanced Authentication server.

For example, if the OTP window is set to 10 (by default), and the current counter value of the server is 100, then any OTP generated from the token with a counter value from 100 to 110 are valid for authentication.

WARNING: Do not increase the HOTP window value to more than 100 as it may decrease the security by causing false matches.

During enrollment or HOTP counter synchronization in the Self-Service portal, **Enrollment HOTP window** that has a value of 100,000 is used. This is helps in the following:

- HOTP tokens may be used for a long period before the enrollment in Advanced Authentication and the value is unknown and can be equal to some thousands.
- Secure because users must provide 3 consequent HOTPs.

Configuring Yubikey for Advanced Authentication Server

1. Download and install the Yubikey Personalization Tool from Yubico.

   To download the Yubikey Personalization Tool, see the Yubico website (https://www.yubico.com/products/services-software/download/yubikey-personalization-tools/).

2. Insert the Yubikey token.

   Ensure that the token is recognized. The recognition is indicated by a message `Yubikey is inserted` at the top-right corner of the Personalization tool.

3. Select **OATH-HOTP mode**.
4. Select **Configuration Slot 1**, generate the **OATH Token Identifier** and **Secret Key**.
5. In **Logging Settings**, select **Log configuration output**.
6. Select **Traditional format** or **Yubico format**.
7. Click **Write Configuration** and save the CSV file.

For information about how to enroll the HOTP method, see “HOTP ”in the *Advanced Authentication-User* guide.

TOTP

TOTP is a time based one time password. To configure the TOTP authenticator, you can specify the following parameters:

- **OTP period (sec)**: The value to specify how often a new OTP is generated. The default value is 30 seconds. The maximum value for the OTP period is 360 seconds.
- **OTP format**: The number of digits in the OTP token. The default value is 6 digits. The value must be the same as the tokens you are using.
- **OTP window**: The value to specify the periods used by Advanced Authentication server for TOTP generation. For example, if you have a period of 30 and a window of 4, then the token is valid for 2*30 seconds before current time and 2*30 seconds after current time, which is ±2

minutes. These configurations are used because time can be out-of-sync between the token and the server and may impact the authentication. The maximum value for the OTP window is 64 periods.

IMPORTANT: It is not recommended to use an OTP window equal to 32 and higher for 4-digit OTP because it reduces security.

- **Google Authenticator format of QR code (Key URI)**: Option to display the QR code for the TOTP enrollment of the software token in a format that is compatible with the Google Authenticator, Microsoft Authenticator, or the NetIQ Auth apps. When you disable the option, the displayed QR code can be scanned only with the NetIQ Auth smartphone app. Enable the option to allow enrollment with the Google Authenticator or Microsoft Authenticator apps. The QR code of Google Authenticator format can also be scanned with the NetIQ Auth app (supported by the last iOS and Android apps).

  IMPORTANT: OTP format must be set to 6 digits when you use the Google Authenticator format of QR code.

- **Allow manual enrollment**: When you enable the option, the **Specify the TOTP secret manually** section is displayed on the TOTP enrollment page of the Self-Service portal with the following parameters: **Secret**, **Period**, and **Google Authenticator format of secret (Base32)**. By default, the option is disabled and the settings are hidden. Enabling the option may result in security risks.

You must perform the following tasks to allow the users to enroll TOTP method using the Desktop OTP tool:

- Generating an Enrollment Link
- Sending an Enrollment Link Through Email

Generating an Enrollment Link

Users can click the enrollment link to enroll the TOTP authenticator automatically on the Desktop OTP tool and following the further steps as described in Desktop OTP Tool. To generate an enrollment link, you can encode the server URL, tenant ID, and category name to the Base64 format using any online tool. The generated link is then sent to the users through the email to access the Desktop OTP tool and enroll the TOTP authenticator. The users can create an account on the tool to enroll the TOTP authenticator in the Self-Service portal.

To generate the enrollment link in the Base64 format, perform the following steps:

1. To encode use the details such as server URL, tenant ID and category name in the following format:

   ```
   {"server_url":"<domain-name>","tenant_name":"<tenant-name>","category_name":
   "HOME"}
   ```

   For example, {"server_url": "aafserver.company.com", "tenant_name":"netiq", "category_name": "HOME"}

   You can specify the preferred category name for `category_name` parameter if you have added categories in the Event Categories policy. You can remove the parameter `category_name`, if you have not added any category.

2. Encode the value including {} to Base64 (charset: UTF-8) format.

   For example, the encoded link is displayed as:

eyJzZXJ2ZXJfdXJsIjogImFhZnNlcnZlci5jb21wYW55LmNvbSIsICJ0ZW5hbnRfbmFtZSI6Im5ldGlx4oCdLCAiY2F0ZWdvcnlfbmFtZSI6ICJIT01FIn0=

3 Copy the encoded link for further use.

Sending an Enrollment Link Through Email

1 Compose an email with the subject and body.

For example, specify TOTP Enrollment Link in the Subject and body as follows:

Hi Users, Click here to enroll for the TOTP authenticator using the Desktop OTP tool.

2 Right click on the preferred text and select **Hyperlink**.

3 Specify the encoded link and prefix `aaf-otp` in **Address**.

For example, aaf-otp:eyJzZXJ2ZXJfdXJsIjogImFhZnNlcnZlci5jb21wYW55LmNvbSIsICJ0ZW5hbnRfbmFtZSI6Im5ldGlx4oCdLCAiY2F0ZWdvcnlfbmFtZSI6ICJIT01FIn0=

4 Specify the email address of the preferred users in **To** then click **Send**.

User can click the hyperlink to open the Desktop OTP automatically.

Importing PSKC or CSV Files

You can import the `PSKC` or `CSV` files. These token files contain token information. To import these files, perform the following steps:

1 Click the **OATH Token** tab.

2 Click **Add**.

3 Click **Browse** and select a `PSKC` or `CSV` file.

4 Choose a **File type**. The options are:

- **OATH compliant PSKC**: This file type must be compliant with OAuth. For example, HID OATH TOTP compliant tokens.
- **OATH csv**: This file type must contain the format as described in CSV File Format To Import OATH Compliant Tokens. You cannot use the YubiKey CSV files.
- **Yubico csv**: In this file type, you must use one of the supported **Log configuration output** (see **YubiKey Personalization Tool > Settings tab > Logging Settings**) formats with comma as a delimiter.
  - Traditional format: In this file type, **OATH Token Identifier** must be enabled.
  - Yubico format: This file type is supported only for **HOTP Length** set to **6 Digits** and **OATH Token Identifier** set to **All numeric**.

IMPORTANT: **Moving Factor Seed** must not exceed 100000.

5 Add the encrypted `PSKC` files. For this, select **Password** or **Pre-shared key** in **PSKC file encryption type** and provide the information.You can select **Not encrypted**, if the `PSKC` file is not encrypted with either the password or key.

6 Click **Upload** to import tokens from the file.

NOTE: Advanced Authentication receives an **OTP format** from the imported tokens file and stores the information in the enrolled authenticator. Therefore, you need not change the default value of **OTP format** on the **Edit Method** tab.

When the tokens are imported, you can see the list and you must assign the tokens to users. This can be done in the following two ways:

- Click **Edit** next to the token and select **Owner** and click **Save**.
- A user can self-enroll a token in the Self-Service portal. Administrator must let the user know an appropriate value from the **Serial** column for the self-enrollment.

NOTE: **Tenancy settings** are not supported for the OATH tokens. Therefore, the configurations in the **OATH Tokens** tab cannot be enforced on tenant administrators.

CSV File Format To Import OATH Compliant Tokens

A `CSV` file, which is imported as `OATH csv` file in the **Administration portal > Methods** > **OATH OTP** > **OATH Tokens** tab, must contain fields with the following parameters:

- Token's serial number
- Token's seed
- (Optional) Type of the token: TOTP or HOTP (by default HOTP)
- (Optional) OTP length (default value is 6 digits)
- (Optional) Time step (default value is 30 seconds)

Comma is a delimiter.

The following is an example of a CSV file:

```
Token001, 15d2fa517d3c6b791bd4cc2044c241429307001f
Token002, 8c557fc050721037fd31e1d3345b5d3263263e0f, totp, 8
Token003, 658208efea5ac49d5331ba781e66f2c808cccc8e, hotp, 6
Token004, 89f0dfe1c90379da6a11aaca2fc1070f606efe36, totp, 6, 60
```

IMPORTANT: For the YubiKey tokens, you must use the traditional format of the CSV (check **YubiKey Personalization Tool > Settings tab > Logging Settings**) with comma as a delimiter. Use Yubico csv file type (**Advanced Authentication Administration portal > Methods > OATH OTP > OATH Tokens**).

Password

In the **Password** authentication method, you can configure security options for passwords that are stored in the appliance. For example, the **local/admin** user who does not have an LDAP Password can use this option.

NOTE: Do not use the **Password** method in chains that contain only one factor. You must always combine the **Password** method with other factors.

You can configure the following options for the **Password** method:

- **Minimum password length**: The maximum length of the password.
- **Maximum password age**: The validity period of the password. The default value is 42 days. If you set the value to 0, the password never expires.

- **Complexity requirements**: Option to enable users to create a complex and not easily detectable password.Set to **ON** to enable this option. Password must meet the following requirements:
  - Contains at least one uppercase character
  - Contains at least one lowercase character
  - Contains at least one digit
  - Contains at least one special character

IMPORTANT: Advanced Authentication does not generate notifications about the password expiry. After the password expires, the local administrator cannot sign-in to the Administration portal and users using this method cannot get authenticated.

However, an administrator and a user can change their passwords in the Self-Service portal.

PKI

The Public Key Infrastructure (PKI) creates, stores, and distributes digital certificates. These certificates are used to verify whether a particular public key belongs to a specific entity.

Advanced Authentication supports the following two forms of PKI authentication:

- PKI Device
- Virtual Smartcard

PKI Device

PKI device stores the digital certificates and private keys securely. It uses the PKI infrastructure to store personal details of user such as private key, PIN, and digital certificate.

You can configure the following settings for the PKI method:

- "Adding the Trusted Root Certificates" on page 64
- "Disabling the Key-Pair Option" on page 66

Adding the Trusted Root Certificates

You must upload the trusted root certificates for the PKI method. These certificates must meet the following requirements:

- **Root CA** certificate is in the `.pem` format.
- All certificates in the certification path (except Root CA) contain **AIA** and **CDP** http link to check revocation status.
- The certificate for PKI device contains a key pair: public and private key in the x509 format. The certificates that do not comply with the requirements are ignored and hidden during enrollment.

For more information, see Single Tier PKI Hierarchy Deployment and Two Tier PKI Hierarchy Deployment.

To upload a new trusted root certificate, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Add** in the **Edit Method** page of PKI.
2. Click **Browse**.

3 Choose a `.pem` certificate file and click **Upload**.

4 Click **Save**.

NOTE: You must upload only the **Root CA** on appliance.

You can configure the PKI method (with certificates) in one of the following ways:

- Standalone Root CA
- Subordinate CA

NOTE: Advanced Authentication supports the `p7b` format of parent certificates. These `p7b` format files can contain certificates and chain certificates, but not the private key. They are Base64 encoded ASCII files with extensions `.p7b` or `.p7c`.

Configuring the Environment for a Standalone Root CA

1 Install **Web Server (IIS) Role**.

2 Create the `CertEnroll` Folder and grant **Share & NTFS** permissions to the **Cert Publishers** group.

3 Create **CertEnroll Virtual Directory** in IIS.

4 Enable **Double Escaping** on IIS Server.

5 Install **Enterprise Root CA** using Server Manager.

6 Enable **Object Access Auditing** on CA.

7 Configure the **AIA** and **CDP**.

8 Publish the Root CA Certificate to AIA.

9 Export **Root CA** in `.der` format and convert the format to `.pem`.

10 Export personal certificate (that was signed by Root CA) with private key and place it on a PKI device.

Configuring the Environment for a Subordinate CA

1 Install **Web Server (IIS) Role**.

2 Create the `CertEnroll Folder` and grant **Share & NTFS** permissions to **Cert Publishers** group.

3 Create **CertEnroll Virtual** Directory in IIS.

4 Enable **Double Escaping** on IIS Server.

5 Install the **Standalone Offline Root CA**.

6 Create a `CAPolicy.inf` for the standalone offline root CA.

7 Installing the **Standalone Offline Root CA**.

8 Enable **Auditing** on the Root CA.

9 Configure the **AIA** and **CDP**.

10 Install Enterprise Issuing CA.

11 Create `CAPolicy.inf` for Enterprise Root CA.

12 Publish the **Root CA Certificate** and **CRL**.

13 Install **Subordinate Issuing CA**.

14 Submit the Request and Issue subordinate **Issuing CA Certificate**.

15 Install the subordinate **Issuing CA Certificate**.

16 Configure **Certificate Revocation** and **CA Certificate Validity Periods.**

17 Enable **Auditing** on the Issuing CA.

18 Configure the **AIA** and **CDP**.

19 Install and configure the **Online Responder Role Service**.

20 Add the **OCSP URL** to the subordinate Issuing CA.

21 Configure and publish the **OCSP Response Signing Certificate** on the subordinate Issuing CA.

22 Configure **Revocation Configuration** on the **Online Responder**.

23 Configure **Group Policy** to provide the OCSP URL for the subordinate Issuing CA.

24 Export **Root CA** in `.der` format and convert the format to `.pem`.

25 Export personal certificate (that was signed by subordinate CA) with private key and place it on a PKI device.

Disabling the Key-Pair Option

The **Allow key-pair** option is enabled by default. This indicates that the enrollment of the PKI method can be done with either the CA certificates or through the key-pair generation. However, you can disable the key-pair based enrollment of the PKI device and enforce PKI enrollment only using a user certificate issued by the CA. To disable this option, set **Allow key-pair** to **OFF**.

Virtual Smartcard

Virtual Smartcard is an extension of PKI method. Advanced Authentication allows users to enroll the PKI method using a virtual smartcard that is imported to the browser on the user's system and used for authentication. Virtual smartcard is a certificate that contains information such as digital signature, expiration date, name of user, name of CA (Certificate Authority), and can be used in client SSL certificate. Typically, the certificate is available in `.pfx` format. The information available in the virtual smartcard is used to authenticate the user to any web environment.

NOTE: The virtual smartcard supports authentication to the OAuth 2.0 and SAML 2.0 events. The virtual smartcard does not support authentication to Advanced Authentication portals, such as Administration, Helpdesk, Self-Service, and Reporting.

To configure the virtual smartcard, perform the following steps:

NOTE: Before you configure the virtual smartcard support for the SAML 2.0 events, ensure to specify the **Identity Provider's URL** in format `https://webauth.domain_name` in the Web Authentication policy. Later, save the settings before downloading the SAML 2.0 metadata file.

NOTE: Before you configure virtual smartcard support for the PKI method, ensure to perform the following tasks:

- Resolve the IP address of Advanced Authentication server with the following host names on the DNS server:
  - `<aaserver_ip_address> <aaserver_hostname>`
  - `<aaserver_ip_address> <webauth.aaserver_hostname>`

- Define the following attributes in the third-party application that you want to integrate with Advanced Authentication server:
  - `authorization_endpoint = https://webauth.aaserver_hostname/osp/a/TOP/auth/oauth2/grant`
  - `token_endpoint = https://webauth.aaserver_hostname/osp/a/TOP/auth/oauth2/getattributes`

---

1. Configure the following settings in the **HTTPS Options** policy:
   - Set **Enable Client SSL for Webauth Service** to **ON** and upload Root CA certificate in the `.pem` format that is used by the Web server.
   - Set **Enable auto enrollment based on certificate** to **ON**. This enables you to allow users to auto-enroll the PKI method using virtual smartcard for the **OAuth 2.0** and **SAML 2.0** events.

     NOTE: The manual enrollment of the PKI method using the virtual smartcard is not supported. Therefore, it is required to set **Enable auto enrollment based on certificate** to **ON** in the **HTTPS Options** policy. With this configuration, the users can auto-enroll PKI method using virtual smartcard when they access **OAuth 2.0** event for the first time and select a valid certificate. This auto-enrollment happens irrespective of enrollment status of other method(s) that are available with the PKI method in the same authentication chain.

     To allow a user to login to the **OAuth 2.0** and **SAML 2.0** events before auto-enrolling the PKI method, ensure to add at least one more chain to the event (for example, a chain with only the LDAP Password method) below the PKI chain. The user must enroll all method(s) of new chain. During the first login attempt, the PKI method using the virtual smartcard gets enrolled automatically. For the sub-sequent log ins, the top chain in the list (which is PKI) is selected and user is authenticated automatically.
2. Upload Root CA certificate in the **Trusted root certificates** section of **PKI** method.
3. Import the client SSL certificate to the users browser.

   NOTE: The procedure to import the client SSL certificate varies on each browser.

   For more information about how to import the client SSL certificate to the Chrome browser, see Importing Client SSL Certificate to a Certificate Store.

An Example of Auto-enrolling PKI Method with the Virtual Smartcard

Consider the administrator has performed the following steps to allow auto-enrollment of the PKI method using the virtual smartcard:

- Created a chain with the PKI method and another chain with preferred methods such as **LDAP password** and **Password**.
- Mapped the chain to the **OAuth 2** event.
- Configure the following settings in the **HTTPS options** policy:
  - Set **Enable SSL Client Certificate** to **ON** and uploaded a valid CA certificate.
  - Set **Enable Auto Enrollment based on certificate** to **ON**.
- Imported the client certificate to the user's browser in the `.pfx` format containing details, such as digital signature, expiration date, name of user, name of CA and so on.

Mark, an end user, wants to auto-enroll the PKI method using the virtual smartcard. When he tries to access the `somecompany.com` website, the user name stored in the certificate gets filled in the user name field in the login form automatically. Mark is required to select the preferred certificate to

validate his identity in the **User Identification Request** dialog box. Then, Mark must specify LDAP details for additional validation. If the specified details are valid, Mark gets auto-enrolled to the PKI method using the virtual smartcard without physical PKI token.

During subsequent logins, Mark may experience one of the following scenario:

- If there is a chain with only PKI method associated to the web authentication event, then Mark gets authenticated automatically.
- If there are more than one chain associated to the web authentication event, then Mark is prompted with the list of chains that contains PKI in addition to other available chains. In this case, he can select the chain with only PKI method to authenticate automatically or select preferred chain and provide corresponding details to authenticate successfully.

Importing Client SSL Certificate to a Certificate Store

To enable and achieve the virtual smartcard authentication to the web environment, it is required to import the Client SSL certificate to the browser.

NOTE: The procedure to import the client SSL certificate varies on each browser.

To import the client SSL certificate to Google Chrome browser, perform the following steps:

1. Navigate to **Settings > Manage Settings**.

   The **Certificates** wizard is displayed.
2. Click **Import** and select the client SSL certificate.

   Ensure that the certificate is in `.pfx` format.
3. Click **Next** and **Finish**.

   A message `Certificate has been imported successfully` is displayed.

RADIUS Client

In the **RADIUS Client** method, Advanced Authentication forwards the authentication request to a third-party RADIUS server. This can be any RADIUS server. For example, you can use RADIUS Client as an authentication method when you have a token solution such as RSA or Vasco. You want to migrate users to Advanced Authentication with the flexibility that users can use the old tokens while the new users can use any of the other supported authentication methods.

You can configure the following options for the **RADIUS Client** method:

- **Send the repository name**: Option for a repository name to be used automatically with a username. For example, company\pjones. Set to **ON** to enable the option.
- **NAS Identifier**: An attribute that contains a string identifying the NAS originating the Access-Request. It is only used in Access-Request packets. Either NAS-IP-Address or NAS-Identifier must be present in an Access-Request packet.
- **Timeout**: Specify the number of seconds till when the RADIUS client waits for the RADIUS server to reply before prompting an error `Connection time out`. The default value is 5 seconds.
- **Retries count**: Specify the number of times, the RADIUS client tries to connect to the RADIUS server. If a connection is not established during the retry attempts, a message `Failed to connect to the server` is displayed. The default value is set to 3. If set to 0, the RADIUS client does not try to connect after the first unsuccessful attempt.

- **Specify servers per site**: Option to configure the third-party RADIUS servers that are specific to a site. When set to **ON**, the sites available in the cluster are populated and you can add more than one servers to the preferred site.

  When this option is set to **OFF**, you can add single third-party RADIUS server details that are applicable for all sites in the cluster by specifying the following details:

  - **Server**: The Hostname or IP address of the third-party RADIUS server.
  - **Secret**: The shared secret between the RADIUS server and Advanced Authentication.
  - **Port**: The port to where the RADIUS authentication request is sent. The default port is 1812.

Security Questions

In **Security Questions** authentication method, an administrator can set up a series of predefined questions. A user must answer these questions to get authenticated. Security Questions are used when users forget their passwords.

Security questions are often easy to guess and can often bypass passwords. Therefore, Security Questions do not prove to be secure.

You must follow few guidelines to use this method. You must use **Good** security questions that meet five criteria. Ensure that the answers to a good security question are:

1. **Safe**: Cannot be guessed or researched.
2. **Stable**: Does not change over time.
3. **Memorable**: Can be remembered.
4. **Simple**: Precise, easy, and consistent.
5. **Many**: Has many possible answers.

Some examples of good, fair, and poor security questions according to goodsecurityquestions.com are as follows. For a full list of examples, see the website (http://goodsecurityquestions.com/.)

GOOD

- What is the first name of the person you first kissed?
- What is the last name of the teacher who gave you your first failing grade?
- What is the name of the place your wedding reception was held?
- In what city or town did you meet your spouse/partner?
- What was the make and model of your first car?

FAIR

- What was the name of your elementary / primary school?
- In what city or town does your nearest sibling live?
- What was the name of your first stuffed animal, doll, or action figure?
- What time of the day were you born? (hh:mm)
- What was your favorite place to visit as a child?

POOR

- What is your pet's name?

- In what year was your father born?
- In what county where you born?
- What is the color of your eyes?
- What is your favorite _____?

Configure the following options for the **Security Questions** method:

- **Minimum answer length**: The minimum number of characters an answer must contain.
- **Correct answers for logon**: The number of answers a user must answer correctly to get access.
- **Total questions for logon**: The number of questions that are presented to the user while authenticating.

For example, if the **Correct answers for logon** is set to 3 and the **Total questions for logon** is set to 5, the user needs to specify only 3 correct answers out of a set of 5 questions.

Adding Questions

You can add questions based on your requirement. These questions can be translated in languages that are supported by the Advanced Authentication portals. For example, you set a security questions as **What is your pet name?**. While enrolling and authenticating, this question will be displayed in the language that the user selects in the portal.

To add questions, perform the following:

1. Click **Add** to add a question in the **Question** window.
2. Specify the question in **Question**.
3. You can specify the question to be translated in the required language.

   This translated question is displayed in the portals and Clients based on the selected language.
4. Click the save icon to save the question related settings.

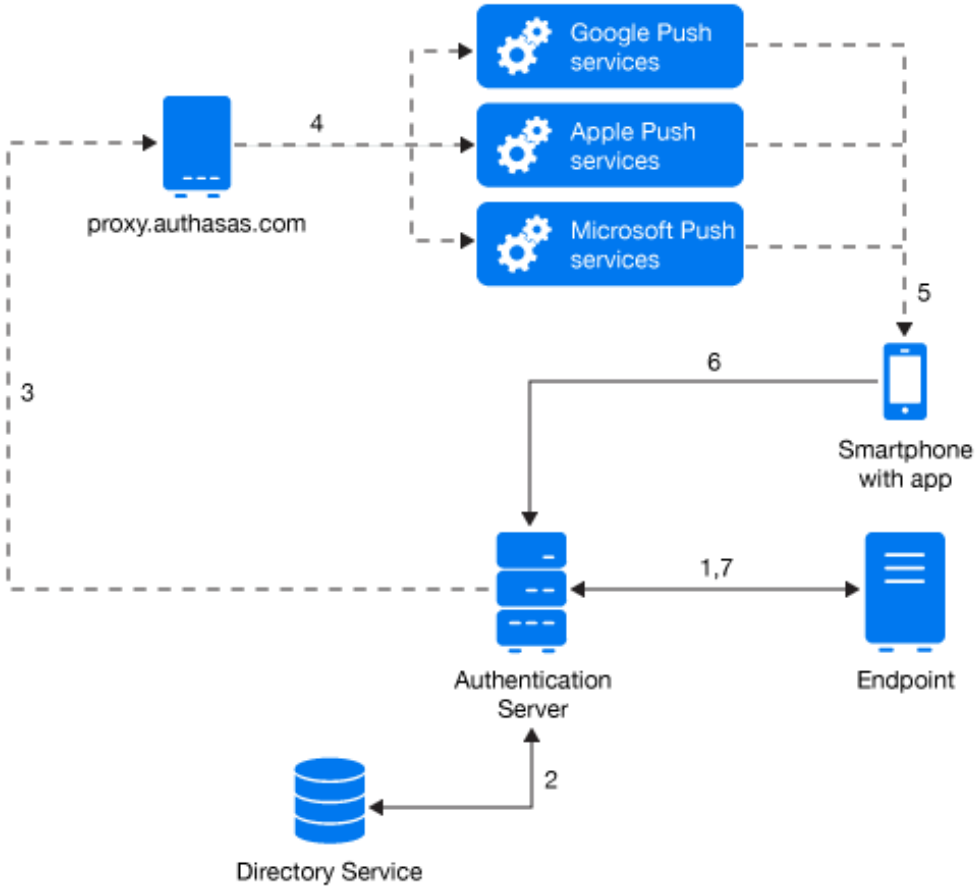
You can add more questions depending on the requirement.

Click **Save** to save the configuration settings for the Security questions method.

Smartphone

Advanced Authentication provides the **Smartphone** method that facilitates users to authenticate through their Smartphone. The authentication happens through the NetIQ smartphone app to perform the out-of-band authentication. The out-of-band authentication is typically a two-factor authentication that requires a secondary verification through a separate communication channel along with the ID and password.

The authentication flow for the Smartphone method in Advanced Authentication is described in the following image.



A user wants to authenticate on an endpoint such as a laptop or a website with the Smartphone method. The following steps describe the authentication flow:

1. When the authentication request is initiated, the endpoint contacts the Advanced Authentication server.
2. The Advanced Authentication server validates the user's credentials.
3. After validating the credentials, the Advanced Authentication server sends a push message to proxy.authasas.com.
4. Depending on the platform of the Smartphone, the server selects an appropriate push service and then forwards the push message to the Smartphone.
5. The push message is then delivered to the user's Smartphone to inform that an authentication request has been initiated.
6. When the user opens the Smartphone app, the app reaches the Advanced Authentication server to validate if there is an authentication needed. The authentication is indicated by the **Accept** and **Reject** options. The user's selection is then sent to the server.
7. Finally, the server validates the authentication and the endpoint gets authenticated.

HTTPS protocol is used for the communication.

This authentication method is recommended to use in combination with another method such as Password or LDAP Password to achieve multi-factor authentication and protect a user from getting SPAM push messages.

Access Configurations

The following are the configurations required for the Smartphone method.

- Advanced Authentication server must be accessible by the specified **Server URL** address from smartphones (HTTPS, outbound).
- Advanced Authentication server must have a permitted outbound connection to proxy.authasas.com (HTTPS).

Scenario for Authenticating with the Smartphone Method

Bob wants to authenticate on the **myexample.com** website. When he logs in to the website, the Smartphone authentication method sends a push message to Bob's mobile phone. When he opens the Smartphone app installed on his phone, he sees **Accept** and **Reject** options. If he selects the **Accept** option, the authentication request is sent over the mobile network (secure) back to the Authentication framework. Without specifying an OTP code, Bob has been authenticated to **myexample.com**.

When your smartphone does not have a network connection, you can use a backup OTP as offline authentication.

Configuring Enrollment Link

Users can enroll the Smartphone method either by a QR code or through a link sent to their email or SMS. You as an administrator must configure the link and send it to all the users whom you want to enroll the authenticator. You can use one of the following links as per the requirement:

```
https://<public_external_url>/smartphone/enroll
```

```
https://<public_external_url>/smartphone/enroll?category=cat1
```

```
https://<public_external_url>/smartphone/enroll?tenant=t1
```

```
https://<public_external_url>/smartphone/enroll?category=cat2&tenant=t1
```

Default category is `default`. Default tenant is `TOP`.

Configuring Smartphone Method

To configure the Smartphone method, specify the following details:

Parameter	Description
Push salt TTL	The lifetime of an authentication request sent to the smartphone.
Learn timeout	The time that is valid for the user to scan the QR code for enrollment.
Authentication salt TTL	The lifetime in which the out-of-band authentication needs to be accepted before authentication fails.
TOTP Length	The length of OTP token used for backup authentication.
TOTP step	The time a TOTP is displayed on a screen before the next OTP is generated. The default time is 30 seconds.
TOTP time window	The time in seconds in which the TOTP entered is accepted. The default time is 300 seconds.
Server URL	The URL of Advanced Authentication server to where the smartphone app connects for authentication.

Parameter	Description
Require PIN	Set to **ON** to enforce the **Enable PIN** setting for the Smartphone application. A user will not be able to edit the settings on the Smartphone **NOTE:** If the PIN is not set, then the user is prompted to set the PIN during authentication.
Minimum PIN length if the PIN is required	The minimum length of the PIN. The available options are 4,5, and 6.
Require biometrics	Set to **ON** to enforce the fingerprint setting for the Smartphone application. A user will not be able to edit the settings on the Smartphone.
Use image on mobile devices	Select the option to use a customized image on your Smartphone app. Browse the image. This image is displayed in the About screen of your Smartphone app. The resolution of the image must be 2732×637 pixels. **NOTE:** The **Require PIN**, **Require biometrics**, and **Use image on mobile devices** policies are automatically applied on the smartphone if a user has an enrolled authenticator in the smartphone app and the app is open on one of the screens: **Authentication Requests**, **Enrolled Authenticators**, or **Requests History**. It takes 2 to 30 seconds to display the authentication request. ◆ If a user has configured a 4-digit PIN but a 6-digit PIN has been enforced by the administrator, then the user will be able to use the 4-digit PIN until the user decides to change the PIN. ◆ If **Require biometrics** is set in the policies, but a user's device does not support fingerprint, the policy will not be applied for the device. ◆ If a user has authenticators enrolled for two different Advanced Authentication servers with different policies, then the policies are combined for the device and the most secure policies are applied for the app.
Disable offline authentication	Select this option to disable users from authenticating using the Smartphone TOTP. By default this option is disabled and users can login using Smartphone even when Smartphone is not connected to a network. Enabling this option will disallow users to use the One-Time Password of the Smartphone method to login to the offline mode.
Advanced Settings ◆ **Vendor** ◆ **Google project ID**	These settings are optional. If you have an approved vendor whose certificate is uploaded to proxy.authasas.com, you can specify the Vendor ID of your iOS app or specify the **Google Project ID** for your Android app. The push notifications will be sent only to the app whose Vendor name or Google Project ID matches with the app. By default Advanced Authentication works with the NetIQ Auth apps.

Parameter	Description
Geo Zones	You can configure Geo-fencing with the Smartphone method. Geo-fencing allows you to authenticate with the Smartphone method with one more factor, which is the geographical location. When you enable geo-fencing, users will be able to authenticate with Smartphone from only allowed geographical locations. You must enable the policy Geo Fencing Options to use geo-fencing. To configure geo-fencing, you need to draw a boundary of the location to be authenticated with a polygon. To configure geo-fencing, perform the following steps: 1. Click **Add**. 2. Specify the name of the zone. 3. Click the Search icon and specify the address to locate the required geographical location. You can click the full-screen icon to view the map in the full screen. 4. Click the polygon icon in the menu bar of the map. 5. Click the starting point on the map and draw the boundary of the specific location to be authenticated. 6. Click to mark the end point of the boundary after you have finished drawing the geo zone. You can also edit the marked polygon by clicking the edit icon. 7. Click **Save**.

NOTE: To use geo-fencing, ensure that access to the location is enabled for the NetIQ Advanced Authentication app on the smartphone.

NOTE: You can customize the authentication request message that is displayed on the NetIQ Auth app using the Custom Messages policy.

For more information about customizing the authentication request message, see Customizing Authentication Request Message For Smartphone Method.

SMS OTP

In the **SMS OTP** authentication method, a one time password (OTP) is sent with the SMS text to the user's phone. The user receives the OTP and enters it on the device where the authentication is happening. The OTP must be used within a specific time frame. The OTPs delivered through text messages prevent phishing and malicious attacks. SMS OTP is recommended to be used with other methods, such as Password or LDAP Password.

NOTE: In the User's settings of a repository, ensure that a phone number without extension is used. An SMS is not sent to the user's mobile where the phone number contains an extension.

To configure the SMS OTP method, specify the following details:

- **OTP Period**: The lifetime of an OTP in seconds. The default value is 120 seconds.The maximum value for the OTP period is 360 seconds.
- **OTP format**: The number of digits in the OTP. The default value is 6.
- **Body**: The text in the SMS that is sent to the user. The following structure describes the text in the OTP:
  - {user}: Name of the user.
  - {endpoint}: Device the user is authenticating to.
  - {event}: Name of the event where the user is trying to authenticate to.
  - {otp}: One-Time Password.
- **User cell phone attribute**: The cell phone number of a user on which the OTP is sent through SMS. You can use custom attributes such as `mobile`, `homePhone`, `ipPhone`, and other attributes of a repository. You must define the attribute in "User Cell Phone Attributes" of the **Repositories** section.

  NOTE: If you do not configure the attribute in the method settings, then the first attribute defined in the "User Cell Phone Attributes" section of Repository configuration is used when the user tries to authenticate. For example, if you define `mobile` as the first attribute in **User cell phone attribute** and do not configure the attribute in method settings of **SMS OTP**, then while authenticating, the first attribute, which is the `mobile` attribute, is used for the **SMS OTP** method authentication.

- **Allow overriding phone number**: Option that allows to prevent users from providing a phone number that is not registered in the LDAP repository. The option is set to **ON** by default. Set to **OFF** to prevent users to specify a different phone number during the enrollment.
- **Allow user enrollment without a phone**: Option to configure settings for the user to enroll the SMS OTP authenticator without a phone number in the repository.

  Set this option to **OFF** to ensure that a user does not enroll the SMS OTP authenticator without a phone. The user gets an error message that you can specify in **Error message**.

  Set this option to **ON** to allow the user to enroll the SMS OTP authenticator without a phone.

Swisscom Mobile ID

In the **Swisscom Mobile ID** authentication method, a PKI- based mobile signature secure encryption technology is stored on a user's SIM card. When the user tries to authenticate, the Swisscom Mobile ID is validated against the user's mobile phone attribute in the repository. If the number is validated, the user gets authenticated.

To configure the Swisscom Mobile ID method, specify the following details:

- **Application Provider ID**: Identifier of the application provider.
- **Application Provider password**: Password of the application provider.
- **Swisscom Mobile ID service URL**: Interface of the Swisscom Mobile ID.
- **Notification message prefix**: Message that is displayed on the user's mobile as a notification.

In addition, you can upload the Swisscom client certificates as follows:

1. Browse **Client SSL certificate**. The required certificate must be in a `.pem` format and self-signed with a private key.

2. Specify **Private key password** for the certificate.
3. Click **Save**.

NOTE: Users must activate the Mobile ID service for the Swisscom SIM card.

For more information about the Swisscom Mobile ID method, see the Mobile ID Reference guide.

FIDO U2F

With the **FIDO U2F** authentication method, users can authenticate with the touch of a finger on the U2F device.

Advanced Authentication supports the Microsoft policy Interactive logon: Smart card removal behavior that allows you to specify an action on the U2F. You can configure the policy to perform a force log off or lock a session when a user removes the U2F device from a computer. This policy is supported for Windows only. When the user removes the U2F device from the computer, the Windows Client runs an action that is specified in the Interactive logon: Smart card removal behavior policy.

IMPORTANT: To use the FIDO U2F authentication for Access Manager in the **OAuth 2.0** event, you must configure an external web service to perform enrollment and authentication for one domain name. For more information, see Configuring a Web Server to Use the FIDO U2F Authentication.

The YubiKey tokens may flash with a delay when the token is initialized in a combination mode. For example, when authentication uses OTP and U2F methods. This may cause the users to wait for the token to flash before enrollment or authentication. Therefore, it is recommended to flash the tokens only in the U2F mode if the other modes are not needed.

You can configure the following settings for this method:

- “Configuring the Certificate Settings” on page 77
- “Configuring Facets” on page 77
- “Configuring Yubikey for Advanced Authentication Server” on page 78
- “Configuring a Web Server to Use the FIDO U2F Authentication” on page 78

Configuring the Certificate Settings

You can configure certificate settings for the FIDO U2F authentication method. By default, Advanced Authentication does not require the attestation certificate for authentication by the FIDO U2F compliant token. Ensure that you have a valid attestation certificate added for your FIDO U2F compliant token, when you configure this method. The Yubico and Feitian attestation certificates are pre-configured in the Advanced Authentication appliance.

To validate the attestation certificate for the FIDO U2F authentication, perform the following steps:

1. Set **Require attestation certificate** to **ON** to enable validation of attestation certificate.
2. Select the attestation certificate:
   - **2a** To use a default certificate, click **Add Default**.
   - **2b** To use a custom certificate instead of predefined device manufacturer certificate, perform the following steps:
     - **2b1** Click next to the default attestation certificate to remove the certificate.
     - **2b2** Click **Add** to add a custom certificate.
     - **2b3** Click **Browse** then select the custom certificate and click **Upload**.

       The certificate must be in the `PEM` format.

   To restore the deleted attestation certificate, click **Add Default**.

Configuring Facets

You can add a list of facets for the FIDO U2F tokens to work on multiple sub-domains of a single domain.

Previously, the U2F RFC standards allowed authentication only on the domain name on which the enrollment was done. But with the FIDO U2F standards update (https://fidoalliance.org/specs/fido-u2f-v1.2-ps-20170411/fido-appid-and-facets-v1.2-ps-20170411.html), the FIDO alliance introduces facets that allows users to authenticate even on domains on which the enrollment is not done.

For example, if a user enrolls a token on `https://some.domain` and wants to get authenticated on `https://app.some.domain`, you as an administrator can do this by adding `https://app.some.domain` as a facet of the primary domain `https://some.domain`.

WARNING: Even if you are not using the facets, ensure to configure the **Facets primary server URL suffix** to enable the users to authenticate with the FIDO U2F method. If the **Facets primary server URL suffix** is not configured then while authenticating with FIDO U2F, the user is prompted with a message `The visited URL doesn't match the application ID or it is not in use.`

To add facets, perform the following steps:

1. Expand **Facets settings.**
2. Specify the suffix of the primary facet in **Facets primary server URL suffix**. For example, you can specify `some.domain`.

   NOTE: In **Facets primary server URL suffix**, if you specify any value with `https://` then user cannot enroll the U2F method.

   ---

3. Click **Add** to add prefixes for the facets.
4. Specify the prefix of the facet in **Facets prefixes**. For example, `app`.

From the above example, if a user logs in to `https://app.some.domain` with the U2F token enrolled on `https://some.domain`. the browser sends a plain `GET` request to the `https://URL/<tenant-ID/app-id.json` URL and waits for the list of allowed facets (sub-domains). If the list is returned, browser allows the user to use token on the URLs specified in the **Facets prefixes** list.

5 Click **Save**.

NOTE: The facets are supported only on the Google Chrome. The support for sub-domains is not stabilized in Chrome, so you might get an error message `The visited URL doesn't match the application ID or it is not in use` during enrollment and authentication.

Configuring Yubikey for Advanced Authentication Server

1 Download and install the Yubikey Personalization Tool from Yubico.

To download the Yubikey Personalization Tool, see the Yubico website (https://www.yubico.com/products/services-software/download/yubikey-personalization-tools/).

2 Insert the Yubikey token.

Ensure that the token is recognized. The recognition is indicated by a message `Yubikey is inserted` at the top-right corner of the Personalization tool.

3 Select **Yubico OTP mode**.

4 Select **Configuration Slot 1**, generate the **Public Identity, Private Identity, and Secret Key.**

5 Click **Write Configuration** and specify the configurations.

6 Open the Advanced Authentication Self-Service portal and select U2F method.

7 Click **Save** to complete the enrollment.

Configuring a Web Server to Use the FIDO U2F Authentication

This section is applicable for Debian 8 Jessie. The procedure may differ for other distributives.

This sections explains how to configure web server to use the FIDO U2F authentication in NetIQ Access Manager for the **OAuth 2.0** event.

According to the FIDO U2F specification, both enrollment and authentication must be performed for one domain name. As NetIQ Access Manager and Advanced Authentication appliance are located on different servers, you must configure web server to enable performing the following actions:

- Port forwarding to Advanced Authentication appliance for the FIDO U2F method enrollment
- Port forwarding to NetIQ Access Manager for further authentication using FIDO U2F tokens

Perform the following actions to configure a web server to use the FIDO U2F authentication.

Installing Nginx Web Server

You must install the Nginx web server for URL forwarding.

To install Nginx, add the following two lines to the `/etc/apt/sources.list` file:

```
deb http://packages.dotdeb.org jessie all
deb-src http://packages.dotdeb.org jessie all
```

Preparing SSL Certificate

Run the following commands:

```
mkdir –p /etc/nginx/ssl
openssl req -x509 -nodes -days 365 -newkey rsa:2048 -keyout /etc/nginx/ssl/
proxy.key -out /etc/nginx/ssl/proxy.crt
```

Preparing Nginx Proxy Configuration

Add the following to the `/etc/nginx/sites-available/proxy` file:

```
server {
listen 443 ssl;
error_log /var/log/nginx/proxy.error.log info;
server_name nam.company.local;
ssl_certificate /etc/nginx/ssl/proxy.crt;
ssl_certificate_key /etc/nginx/ssl/proxy.key;
location ~ ^/account {

proxy_set_header X-Real-IP $remote_addr;
proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-Server $host;
proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-For $proxy_add_x_forwarded_for;
proxy_set_header Host $host;
proxy_pass https://<appliance_IP>$uri?$args;
}
location ~ ^/static {

proxy_set_header X-Real-IP $remote_addr;
proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-Server $host;
proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-For $proxy_add_x_forwarded_for;
proxy_set_header Host $host;
proxy_pass https://<appliance_IP>$uri?$args;
}
location ~ ^/admin {

proxy_set_header X-Real-IP $remote_addr;
proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-Server $host;
proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-For $proxy_add_x_forwarded_for;
proxy_set_header Host $host;
proxy_pass https://<appliance_IP>$uri?$args;
}
location / {

proxy_set_header X-Real-IP $remote_addr;
proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-Server $host;
proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-For $proxy_add_x_forwarded_for;
proxy_set_header Host $host;
proxy_read_timeout 300;
proxy_pass https://<NAM_IP>;
}
}
```

Create a link and restart the nginx service running the following commands:

```
ln -s /etc/nginx/sites-available/proxy /etc/nginx/sites-enabled/proxy
service nginx reload
```

Adding DNS Entries

Ensure that the NetIQ Access Manager name server corresponds to the IP address of web server.

Enrolling U2F FIDO

To enroll U2F, open the link `https://<NAM_FQDN>/account`. The Self-Service portal of Advanced Authentication server appliance is displayed.

Enroll the U2F method in the Self-Service portal. For information about enrolling, see "Enrolling the Authentication Methods".

Voice

In the **Voice** authentication method, a user receives a call with a PIN request, after which the user must specify the PIN on his or her phone.

The following workflow describes the Voice authentication method in Advanced Authentication:

1. A user tries to authenticate with the Voice method.
2. The user receives a call on the phone with a PIN request.
3. User must specify the PIN that has been enrolled in the Self-Service portal during the enrollment.
4. After the user specifies the PIN followed by a hash (#) symbol, user is authenticated with the Voice method.

IMPORTANT: Phone number with extensions are supported for this method.

Special characters "," and "x" are used to indicate wait time and can be used as separators between phone number and extension.

For example, if +123456789 is the phone number and 123 is the extension, then it can be specified as +123456789,,,,123.

In the above example, "," is specified 4 times and this multiplied by 0.5 (default value in Twilio) indicates the wait time, which is 2 (4*0.5) seconds. First, call is sent to the number 123456789 and after a wait period of 2 seconds, the extension 123 is dialed.

To configure the Voice method, specify the following details:

- **Minimum PIN length**: The length of the PIN must be at least three characters long.
- **Maximum PIN age**: The validity period of a PIN. The default value is 42 days. If you set the age to 0, the PIN will not expire.
- **User cell phone attribute**: The cell phone number of a user that is used to call the user for voice authentication. You can use custom attributes such as `mobile`, `homePhone`, `ipPhone`, and other attributes of a repository. You must define the attribute in "User Cell Phone Attributes" of the **Repositories** section.

  NOTE: If you do not configure the attribute in the method settings, then the first attribute defined in the "User Cell Phone Attributes" section of Repository configuration is used when the user tries to authenticate. For example, if you define `mobile` as the first attribute in **User cell phone attribute** and do not configure the attribute in method settings of **Voice**, then while authenticating, the first attribute, which is the `mobile` attribute, is used for the **Voice** method authentication.

- **Allow overriding phone number**: Option that allows to prevent users from providing a phone number that is not registered in the LDAP repository. The option is set to **ON** by default. Set to **OFF** to prevent users to specify a different phone number during the enrollment.
- **Allow user enrollment without a phone**: Option to configure settings for the user to enroll the Voice authenticator without a phone number in the repository.

  Set this option to **OFF** to ensure that a user does not enroll the Voice authenticator without a phone. The user gets an error message that you can specify in **Error message**.

  Set this option to **ON** to allow the user to enroll the Voice authenticator without a phone.

IMPORTANT: Advanced Authentication does not notify a user about the expiry of a PIN.

Voice OTP

In the **Voice OTP** authentication method, a user receives an OTP over a call. The user must specify this OTP on the device where the authentication is happening. The OTP must be used within a specific time frame. Voice OTP is recommended to use with other methods, such as Password or LDAP Password.

To configure the Voice OTP method, specify the following details:

- **OTP period**: The time period for which the Voice OTP is valid. Default time is 120 seconds. The maximum value for the Voice OTP period is 360 seconds.
- **OTP format**: The length of the Voice OTP token. Default length is 4.
- **Body**: The text or number in the Voice OTP that is sent to the user. Here, you can specify the `{otp}` variable, which is the actual one-time password. To repeat the one-time password during the call you can specify: `Use the OTP for authentication: {otp}. OTP: {otp}`.
- **User cell phone attribute**: Cell phone number of a user that is used to send the OTP through a call. You can use custom attributes such as `mobile`, `homePhone`, `ipPhone`, and other attributes of a repository. You must define the attribute in "User Cell Phone Attributes" of the **Repositories** section.

  NOTE: If you do not configure the attribute in the method settings, then the first attribute defined in the "User Cell Phone Attributes" section of Repository configuration is used when the user tries to authenticate. For example, if you define `mobile` as the first attribute in **User cell phone attribute** and do not configure the attribute in method settings of **Voice OTP**, then while authenticating, the first attribute, which is the `mobile` attribute, is used for the **Voice OTP** method authentication.

- **Allow overriding phone number**: Option that allows to prevent users from providing a phone number that is not registered in the LDAP repository. The option is set to **ON** by default. Set to **OFF** to prevent users to specify a different phone number during the enrollment.
- **Allow user enrollment without a phone**: Option to configure settings for the user to enroll the Voice OTP authenticator without a phone number in the repository.

  Set this option to **OFF** to ensure that a user does not enroll the Voice OTP authenticator without a phone. The user gets an error message that you can specify in **Error message**.

  Set this option to **ON** to allow the user to enroll the Voice OTP authenticator without a phone.

Web Authentication Method

Advanced Authentication facilitates you to authenticate with different Identity Providers such as OAuth 2.0, OpenID Connect, and SAML 2.0 with the Web Authentication method. The Web Authentication method uses browser and http based authentication protocols and can be used in web environment or hybrid applications.

Before you configure the Web Authentication method, ensure that you that provisions Advanced Authentication to the users.

NOTE: Ensure that you use a valid certificate for the Advanced Authentication server. Users may face enrollment issues on the Internet Explorer and Microsoft Edge browsers, if the certificates are not valid.

To configure the Web Authentication method for Advanced Authentication, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Methods > Web Authentication**.
2. Click **Add** in **Identity providers**.
3. Select the **Authentication type**.
4. Click the arrow icon.

You can configure the Web Authentication method to use the following Identity Providers:

- SAML
- OpenID Connect
- OAuth 2.0

SAML for Advanced Authentication

To add the SAML Identity Provider, perform the following steps:

1. Specify the identity provider name in **Identity Provider**.
2. Select the **Available presets for Name ID Format**.

   The **Name ID Format** is automatically populated.

   or

   Specify manually in **Name ID Format**.
3. Click **Browse** to upload the **Identity Provider Metadata file**.

   WARNING: Ensure that you choose the Identity Provider Metadata file that is exported from a used Identity Provider. Do not use the metadata file exported from the **Administrative Portal > Policies > Web Authentication**.

   ---
4. Click the save icon.
5. In the **Upload SAML Service Provider signature certificate** section, you must upload a certificate file in the `PEM` format with a private key. This certificate is used by the Web Authentication method to sign a SAML `AuthnRequest` token.

   If the private key is protected by a password, specify the password in **Private key password**.
6. Click **Save**.

An Example Configuration with ADFS

Perform the following steps to add ADFS as an Identity Provider for the Web Authentication method.

1. Specify **myexample-adfs** as the **IdP provider name**.
2. Select **urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.1:nameid-format:WindowsDomainQualifiedName** from **Available presets for Name ID Format**.

   The selected **Name ID Format** will be extracted from the SAML `AuthnResponse` token and saved as an authentication data (unique data which will be associated with the user).
3. Click **Browse** to upload the **IdP Metadata file** from the ADFS server.
4. Click the save icon.
5. In the **Upload SAML Service Provider signature certificate** section, upload a certificate file in the `PEM` format with a private key.

   If the private key is protected by a password, specify the password in **Private key password**.
6. Click **Save**.

Configuring the ADFS Identity Provider

1. Save the Service Provider metadata from Advanced Authentication to a file. Use the URL mentioned below to obtain the Service Provider metadata:

   `https://AAF_SERVER/webauth/TENANT/metadata`

   NOTE: The default TENANT is TOP. Use TOP as TENANT if you are not using multi-tenancy.

   A sample Service Provider metadata is mentioned below:


```
<md:EntityDescriptor xmlns:md="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:metadata"
ID="_7a8608ad1cfbc149" entityID="https://www.d18r14.tk/webauth">
<md:SPSSODescriptor
protocolSupportEnumeration="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:protocol
urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.1:protocol urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.0:protocol">
<md:KeyDescriptor>
<ds:KeyInfo xmlns:ds="http://www.w3.org/2000/09/xmldsig#">
<ds:KeyName>https://www.d18r14.tk/webauth</ds:KeyName>
<ds:X509Data>
<ds:X509Certificate>
MIIEOzCCAyOgAwIBAgIJAJcsrIQZzcT0MA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAMIGyMQswCQYD
VQQGEwJDSDEcMBoGA1UECAwTR3JlYXRlciBadXJpY2ggQXJlYTEPMA0GA1UEBwwG
WnVyaWNoMRcwFQYDVQQKDA5NaWNybyBGb2N1cyBBRzERMA8GA1UECwwIQXV0aGFz
YXMxFzAVBgNVBAMMDm1pY3JvZm9jdXMuY29tMS8wLQYJKoZIhvcNAQkBFiBhbGV4
YW5kZXIuZ2FsaWxvdkBtaWNyb2ZvY3VzLmNvbTAgFw0xNjA1MjAwOTMyMzlaGA8y
MTE2MDQyNjA5MzIzOVowgbIxCzAJBgNVBAYTAkNIMRwwGgYDVQQIDBNHcmVhdGVy
IFp1cmljaCBBcmVhMQ8wDQYDVQQHDAZadXJpY2gxFzAVBgNVBAoMDk1pY3JvIEZv
Y3VzIEFHMREwDwYDVQQLDAhBdXRoYXNhczEXMBUGA1UEAwwObWljcm9mb2N1cy5j
b20xLzAtBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWIGFsZXhhbmRlci5nYWxpbG92QG1pY3JvZm9jdXMu
Y29tMIIBIjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEA5ZjKCY2x2ruYkW8e
/IgOa5y9xqSx4bUogYuZnAwLgZH2EIEx54T1YzKKc6a58t9tFU0Xb1Z47ay57g/B
A1oOOV4HOsl6SRG4lJojiOKSpLb1zZMqj3s1dd9hLE9KuScchApcJ5F8GxPf6YHO
VpY4d6e6Z+fS071lK3UHpjbLQ71yoDV+s+wJ+pmgsLxiyV/7A+CurxixibyXKx2x
jHvynZBPWf1P/goi54gbCZ1PjQnRPKfxUzRvWipH8T2xvfT0UAZL3HO8C6JJGZxQ
t82lw/za9tADH0CxPolL/JJyHeEGJAj07uw1wks6mEv8wZY5KkhuDpVv6BUl146+
tL5LSQIDAQABo1AwTjAdBgNVHQ4EFgQUoeHvvSDZn/GIul8Q6T0yleN9q48wHwYD
VR0jBBgwFoAUoeHvvSDZn/GIul8Q6T0yleN9q48wDAYDVR0TBAUwAwEB/zANBgkq
hkiG9w0BAQsFAAOCAQEAQ+T4XForCi/FFSpNLVxb7x/yO1eBi7JujH7CfNTKXUC3
```

```
STlTZiJaTLVXzNd9dvxSjzAoDy4NVV/T4KiA4ss7JCTPwGrD3S8k/a+GpogRzRcE
R1i/Z/bx2I4PmQk1g1z4lpuqnic0aIg/OVAE0+kwDBK3E0/pgpoSixAAvxEqM5tw
X9vdt3W/QCoAO3rFABRDboaLkslGbk80Q37tEASKFYm4/0fyB3PEv2uL0S6rP/+E
Fp1Xhlk/5MVRHNb0hLqpZmJxne96dnXpo+ZDeCCn87B3257eRFI1eUeAnxuw79vv
uterPobGSjjPm+y7sY2U3hLKsoVymRvqAohrd9kXSQ==
</ds:X509Certificate>
</ds:X509Data>
</ds:KeyInfo>
</md:KeyDescriptor>
<md:AssertionConsumerService
Binding="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:bindings:HTTP-POST" Location="https://
www.d18r14.tk/webauth/callback" index="0"/>
</md:SPSSODescriptor>
</md:EntityDescriptor>
```


2. In the ADFS Management console, click **Relying Party Trusts > Add relying party trust**.
3. In the **Add Relying Party Trust wizard**, click **Start**.
4. Select **Import data about the relying party from a file**.
5. Click **Browse** to upload the Advanced Authentication's metadata file that you created in **Step 1**.
6. Click **Next**.
7. Specify the **Display name**.
8. Click **Next**.
9. Ensure that **Open the Edit Claim Rules dialog for this relying party trust when the wizard closes** is selected.
10. Click **Close**.

    The **Edit Claim Rules wizard** is displayed.
11. Click **Add Rule**.
12. Select **Transform an Incoming Claim** from **Claim rule template**.
13. Click **Next**.
14. Specify the **Claim rule name.**
15. Set **Incoming claim type** to **Windows account name**.
16. Set **Outgoing claim type** to **Name ID** and **Outgoing name ID format** to **Windows Qualified Domain Name**.
17. Ensure that **Pass through all claim values** is selected.
18. Click **Finish**.
19. Click **OK**.
20. In the ADFS Management console, click **Relying Party Trusts** and select the relying party trust you added.
21. Right-click on the relying party trust and select **Properties** from the menu.
22. In **Properties**, click the **Encryption** tab and remove the certificate by clicking **Remove**.
23. Click **OK**.

NOTE: Web authentication method does not support the encrypted tokens.

OpenID Connect for Advanced Authentication

To add the Open ID Connect Identity Provider, perform the following steps:

1 Specify the name of the provider in **Provider name**.

2 Select the **Available presets**.

The **Issuer, Scope**, and **Key field** are automatically populated.

3 Specify the **Client ID** and **Client secret**.

The **Client ID** and **Client secret** can be obtained by registering with the respective Identity Provider that you select, for more information see Integrating Third Party Applications with Advanced Authentication Using OpenID Connect.

NOTE: Set the Callback URL at the respective Identity Provider. For example, `https://<aahostname>/webauth/callback`.

---

4 Turn **Send Client secret as an URL parameter** to **ON** to send the Client secret as a URL. By default, the option is set to **OFF**.

5 Click the save icon.

6 Click **Save** to save the method configuration.

Integrating Third Party Applications with Advanced Authentication Using OpenID Connect

The following sample configurations explains how to configure third party applications with Advanced Authentication using OpenID Connect.

- "Integrating Advanced Authentication with Facebook" on page 85
- "Integrating Advanced Authentication with Google" on page 86
- "Integrating Advanced Authentication with Yahoo" on page 87
- "Integrating Advanced Authentication with Microsoft Azure" on page 87

Integrating Advanced Authentication with Facebook

Perform the following steps to integrate Advanced Authentication with Facebook using OpenID Connect:

1 Login to facebook for developers (https://developer.facebook.com).

2 Click **My Apps**.

3 In the left pane, click **Settings > Basic**.

4 Make a note of **App ID** and **App Secret**. These are the Client ID and Client Secret for Advanced Authentication.

5 In **Display Name**, specify `Advanced Authentication`. This is the name for this OpenID Connect configuration.

6 In **App Domains**, specify the domain name of the Advanced Authentication Server. For example `aafapp.demo.live`.

7 In **Privacy Policy URL**, specify the URL of the Advanced Authentication Server. For example `aafapp.demo.live`.

8 Scroll through the page until you find the **Website** section. If you cannot find the **Website** section, click **Add Platform > Website**.

9 In the **Website** section, specify the web address of the Advanced Authentication Server. For example `aafapp.demo.live`.

10 Click **Save Changes**.

11 In the left pane, click **Settings > Advanced**.

12 Scroll through the page until you find the **Domain Manager** tab.

13 Click **Add a Domain**.

14 In the Add a Domain window, specify the URL of the Advanced Authentication Server in **Site URL**. For example `aafapp.demo.live`.

15 Click **Apply**.

16 Click **Save Changes**.

17 In the left pane, click **App Review.**

18 Make your application public by clicking the toggle switch in the **Make Advanced Authentication public?** section.

19 In the left pane, below the **Products** tab, click Settings.

20 In **Valid OAuth Redirect URIs**, specify `https://<Advanced Authentication Server>/webauth/callback`.

21 Click **Save Changes**.

22 Specify the Client ID and Client Secret generated in Step 4 on page 85 in the **Client ID** and **Client Secret** fields of Advanced Authentication Administrative Portal.

Integrating Advanced Authentication with Google

Perform the following steps to integrate Advanced Authentication with Google using OpenID connect:

1 Login to Google APIs (https://console.developers.google.com/apis/credentials).

2 Click **Credentials > Create**.

3 Specify a **Project Name** and a **Location**.

4 Click **Create**.

5 Click **Create credentials > OAuth client ID**.

6 Click **Configure a consent screen**.

7 Specify a name in the **Application name** field. For example Advanced Authentication.

8 In **Authorised domains**, specify the domain name of the Advanced Authentication Server. For example `aafapp.demo.live`.

9 In **Application Homepage link**, specify the web address of the Advanced Authentication Server. For example `https://aafapp.demo.live`.

10 In **Application Privacy Policy link**, specify the web address of the Advanced Authentication Server. For example `https://aafapp.demo.live`.

11 In **Application type**, select **Web application**.

12 In **Application Terms of Service link**, specify the web address of the Advanced Authentication Server. For example `https://aafapp.demo.live`.

13 In **Name**, specify a name for the OpenID Connect configuration.

14 In **Authorized JavaScript origins**, specify the Advanced Authentication server address. Ensure that you specify the complete server address including `https`. For example `https://aafapp.demo.live`.

15 In **Authorized redirect URIs**, specify `https://<Advanced Authentication Server>/webauth/callback`. Ensure that you specify the valid Advanced Authentication server name inside <>.

16 Click **Save**.

17 Make a note of the client ID and client secret specified in the **OAuth client** window. Click **OK**.

18 Specify the Client ID and Client Secret generated in Step 17 on page 87 in the **Client ID** and **Client Secret** fields of Advanced Authentication Administrative Portal.

Integrating Advanced Authentication with Yahoo

Perform the following steps to integrate Advanced Authentication with Yahoo using OpenID connect:

1 Login to Yahoo Developer Network (https://developer.yahoo.com/apps/).

2 Click **Create an app**.

3 In **Application Name**, specify a name for the OpenID Connect configuration.

4 In **Application Type**, select **Web Application**.

5 In **Callback Domain**, specify the domain name of the Advanced Authentication Server. For example `aafapp.demo.live`.

6 Click **Create**.

7 Make a note of the client ID and client secret. Click **Update**.

8 Specify the Client ID and Client Secret generated in Step 7 on page 87 in the **Client ID** and **Client Secret** fields of Advanced Authentication Administrative Portal.

Integrating Advanced Authentication with Microsoft Azure

Perform the following steps to integrate Advanced Authentication with Microsoft Azure using OpenID connect:

1 Login to Microsoft Azure (https://portal.azure.com/).

2 In the left pane, click **Azure Active Directory**.

3 In the **Manage** section, click **App registrations**.

4 Click **New application registration**.

5 In **Name**, specify a name for the OpenID Connect configuration.

6 In **Application Type**, select **Web app / API**.

7 In **Sign-on URL**, specify `https://<Advanced Authentication Server>/webauth/callback`. Ensure that you specify the correct Advanced Authentication server address inside <>.

8 Click **Create**.

9 Make a note of **Application ID**. It is the Client ID for Advanced Authentication.

10 Click **Settings > Keys**.

11 In the **Passwords** section, specify key description and key duration.

12 Click **Save**.

13 Make a note of the text generated in the **VALUE** field. It is the Client Secret for Advanced Authentication.

14 In the left pane, click **Azure Active Directory**.

15 Click **Properties**.

16 Make a note of the text specified in the **Directory ID** field.

17 Specify the text generated in Step 16 on page 88 in the **Issuer field** of Advanced Authentication Administrative Portal.

18 Specify the Client ID generated in Step 9 on page 87 and Client Secret generated in Step 13 on page 87 in the **Client ID** and **Client Secret** fields of Advanced Authentication Administrative Portal.

OAuth 2.0 for Advanced Authentication

To add the OAuth 2.0 Identity Provider, perform the following steps:

1 Specify the name of the provider in **Provider name**.

2 Select the **Available presets**.

The **Authorization endpoint**, **Token endpoint**, **Attributes endpoint**, **Scope**, and **Key field** are automatically populated.

3 Specify the **Client ID** and **Client secret**.

The **Client ID** and **Client secret** can be obtained by registering with the respective Identity Provider that you select.

NOTE: Set the Callback URL at the respective Identity Provider. For example, `https://<aahostname>/webauth/callback`.

---

4 Turn **Send Client secret as an URL parameter** to **ON** to send the Client secret as a URL. By default, the option is set to **OFF**.

5 Select the format of the access token from **Access token is returned in body encoded as**.

6 Set **Send access token in "Authorization: Bearer" header** to **ON** to send the access token as a header. By default, the option is set to **OFF**.

7 Click the save icon.

8 Click **Save** to save the method configuration.

Windows Hello

Windows Hello authentication allows the users to use the Windows Hello Fingerprint and Facial Recognition authentication to log in to Windows 10. Advanced Authentication supports the Windows Hello fingerprint and facial recognition authentication.

To configure Windows Hello method in Advanced Authentication, perform the following steps:

1 Click **Methods > Windows Hello**.

2 (Optional) Set **Allow to specify Username (for AD Users only)** to **ON** if you want the Active Directory users to specify their account name while enrolling. By default, the option is disabled.

This is applicable for Active Directory users only. This option does not affect local and other repository users and they must specify their account name while enrolling.

3 Click **Save**.

6 Creating a Chain

A chain is a combination of authentication methods. A user must pass all methods in the chain to be successfully authenticated. For example, if you create a chain with LDAP Password and SMS OTP, a user must first specify the LDAP Password. If the LDAP password is correct, the system sends an SMS with a One-Time-Password (OTP) to the user's mobile. The user must specify the correct OTP to be authenticated.

Advanced Authentication contains the following chains that are created by default:

1. **LDAP Password Only**: Any user from a repository can use this chain to get authenticated with the LDAP Password (single-factor) method.
2. **Password Only**: Any user who has a Password method enrolled can use this chain to get authenticated with the Password (single-factor) method.

You can create any number of chains with multiple authentication methods. To achieve better security, you can include multiple methods in a chain.

Authentication comprises of the following three factors:

- **Something that you know** such as password, PIN, and security questions.
- **Something that you have** such as smartcard, token, and mobile phone.
- **Something that you are** such as biometrics (fingerprint or iris).

You can achieve multi-factor or strong authentication by using any two factors out of this list. For example, multi-factor authentication can include a combination of password and a token or a smartcard and a fingerprint.

After you create a chain, you can use the chain on specific user groups in your repository. The chain is then mapped to an event.

To create a new chain or edit an existing chain, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Chains**.
2. Click **Add** to create a chain. You can also click the edit icon against the chain that you want to edit.
3. Specify a name of the chain in **Name**.
4. Specify a **Short name**. The short name is used by a user to move to a chain. For example, if you name a chain containing the LDAP Password and SMS methods as **SMS,** then a user can specify <username> sms and the user is forced to use **SMS** as the chain. This is helpful in scenarios when the primary chain is not available.

   NOTE: This is applicable only for the RADIUS Server event.

5. Set **Is enabled** to **ON** to enable the chain.
6. Select the methods that you want to add to the chain from the **Methods** section. You can prioritize the methods in the list. For example, if you create a chain with LDAP Password and HOTP methods, then the user will be prompted for the LDAP Password method first and then the OTP.
7. Specify the groups that will use the authentication chain in **Roles and Groups**.

You can specify the following roles and groups based on your requirement:

- **ALL USERS**: To use all the users and groups of all the added repositories.
- **<REPO\Group>**: To use a specific group from the repository. For example to specify users of an **IT staff** group, specify **FOCUS\IT staff**.
- **<REPO Users>**: To use all the users of a specific repository. For example to use all users in the repository **FOCUS**, specify **FOCUS Users**.

IMPORTANT: It is recommended not to use those groups from which you will not be able to exclude users because you will not be able to free up a user's license. For example, you use a **Repo Users** group or **ALL USERS** group. If an employee from these groups leaves the company and you do not delete the user's domain account but just disable it, the license will not be freed.

---

8 Expand **Advanced Settings** by clicking **+**.

9 Set **Apply if used by endpoint owner** to **ON** if an Endpoint owner must use the chain.

NOTE: The Endpoint owner feature is supported for Windows Client, Mac OS Client, and Linux PAM Client only.

---

10 Specify the **MFA tags**. When a user logs in to Windows on a workstation with Advanced Authentication Windows Client installed, the user's account is moved to the group specified in **MFA tags**.

NOTE: This functionality is available when you set the **Enable filter** to **ON** in the **Logon Filter for AD** policy and have configured the Logon Filter.

For example if you specify a **Card users** group from Active Directory in **MFA tags**, then the user will be moved from the legacy group (specified in the **Advanced Settings** of Active Directory repository) to the **Card users** group.

NOTE: If the user credentials are saved with **Remember my credentials,** the MFA tag does not work while connecting to the Remote Desktop.

---

11 Set **Required chain** to **Nothing**, if this is a required (high-security) chain. To configure a linked chain within a specific time period after successful authentication with a required chain, choose an appropriate required chain. You also need to specify a **Grace period (mins).** Within this time period, the linked chain can be used instead of the required chain. The maximum value for grace period is 44640 minutes (31 days).

NOTE: You must assign both a required and a linked chain to an Event. The linked chain must be of higher order than the corresponding required chain. The option is available when the Linked Chains policy is set to **ON**.

For example, `LDAP Password+Card` is a required chain and `Card` is a linked chain. The users must use `LDAP Password+Card` chain once in every 8 hours and within this period, they can provide only card without the LDAP Password to authenticate.

12 (Conditional) In **Custom names**, you can specify the chain name in a specific language. To do this click **+** to expand the settings and specify the chain name.

13 Click **Save**.

IMPORTANT: If you have configured more than one chain using one method (for example, **LDAP Password**, **LDAP Password+Smartphone**) and assigned it to the same group of users and the same event, then the top chain is always used if the user has enrolled all the methods in the chain. An exception is the use of a high-security chain and its appropriate simple chain, where the simple chain must be higher than its high-security chain.

7 Configuring Events

Advanced Authentication provides authentication events for the supported applications or devices. You can configure an event to leverage the Advanced Authentication functionalities for the respective application or device. The application or device triggers the respective authentication event when a user tries to access it.

You can create customized events for the following:

- Third-party integrations.
- To use Windows Client, Linux PAM Client or Mac OS X Client on both the domain joined and non-domain workstations and it requires to have a separate event to use the non-domain mode.
- Integrations using SAML 2.0 and OAUTH 2.0.
- To create more than one RADIUS Server event.

This section contains the following:

- "Configuring an Existing Event" on page 93
- "Creating a Customized Event" on page 98

Configuring an Existing Event

1. Click **Events**.
2. Click the edit icon against the event that you want to edit.
3. Ensure that **Is enabled** is set to **ON** if you want to use the event.
4. Select the **Event type**.

   For most of the predefined events, you cannot change the **Event type**. For events such as **Windows logon**, **Linux logon,** and **Mac OS logon**, you can change the **Event type** from **OS Logon (domain)** to **OS Logon (local)** if the workstations are not joined to the domain.

   - Select OS Logon (domain) to allow only the domain joined users to login to the event.
   - Select OS Logon (local) to allow any Advanced Authentication user from any repository to access the event. However, users must map themselves to a local user account during their first login by providing the credentials.
5. Enable the **reCAPTCHA** option to **ON** if you want the Google reCAPTCHA option to be displayed in the login page for the particular event.

   The reCAPTCHA option is displayed only when you enable the Google reCAPTCHA Options policy.

   NOTE: The reCAPTCHA option is supported only for the **Admin UI** event, **Authenticators Management** event, **Helpdesk** event, **Helpdesk user** event, **Report logon** event, **Tokens Management** event, and the **Search Card** event.

   ---
6. Select the **Authenticator category.** The **Authenticator category** option is displayed only if you have added categories in the "Event Categories" policy.
7. Select the chains that you want to assign to the current event.

In an event, you can configure a prioritized list of chains that can be used to get access to that specific event.

8 If you want to restrict access of some endpoints to the event, add all the endpoints that must have access to the **Endpoint whitelist**. The remaining endpoints are blacklisted automatically. If you leave the **Endpoints whitelist** blank, all the endpoints will be considered for authentication.

9 Set **Geo-fencing** to **ON** to enable geo-fencing. Move the permitted zones from **Available** to **Used**. For more information about configuring geo-fencing, see the Smartphone method.

IMPORTANT: You must enable the Geo Fencing Options policy to use the geo fencing functionality.

---

10 Select **Allow Kerberos SSO** if you want to enable single sign-on (SSO) to the Advanced Authentication portals. Kerberos SSO is supported for AdminUI, Authenticators Management, Helpdesk, and Report logon events.

11 Set **Bypass user lockout in repository** to **ON**, if you want to allow users who are locked on repository to authenticate on the Advanced Authentication. By default, **Bypass user lockout in repository** is set to **OFF** and users who are locked on repository are not allowed to authenticate.

12 Select the **Allow to logon to this event by shared template** option to allow users to login using shared authenticators. By default this option is disabled for the `Authenticators Management`, `Helpdesk`, `Helpdesk User`, `AdminUI`, `Search Card`, `Token Management`, and `Report Logon` events and enabled for all the other events.

13 Click **Save**.

14 If you want to revert the changes to the default configuration, click **Initialize default chains**.

NOTE: If you have configured more than one chain using one method (for example, **LDAP Password**, **LDAP Password+Smartphone**) and assigned it to the same group of users and to the same event, the top chain is always used if the user has enrolled all the methods in the chain. An exception is the use of a high-security chain and its appropriate simple chain, where the simple chain must be higher than its high-security chain.

TIP: It is recommended to have a single chain with the **Emergency Password** method at the top of the chains list in the **Authenticators Management** event and other events, which are used by users. The chain will be ignored if the user does not have the **Emergency Password** enrolled. The user can use the Emergency Password immediately after the helpdesk administrator enrolls the user with the Emergency Password authenticator.

NOTE: Configurations that have been set by a top administrator for a particular event are grayed out. The configurations are not displayed, if the configurations are hidden by the top administrator.

By default, Advanced Authentication contains the following events.

- “ADFS Event” on page 95
- “AdminUI Event” on page 95
- “Authentication Agent Event” on page 95
- “Authenticators Management Event” on page 96
- “Helpdesk Event” on page 96
- “Helpdesk User Event” on page 97
- “Linux Logon Event” on page 97

- “Mac OS Logon Event” on page 97
- “Mainframe Logon Event” on page 97
- “NAM Event” on page 97
- “NCA Event” on page 97
- “RADIUS Server Event” on page 97
- “Report Logon Event” on page 97
- “Search Card Event” on page 98
- “Tokens Management Event” on page 98
- “Windows Logon Event” on page 98

ADFS Event

This event is used to integrate Advanced Authentication with ADFS using the previous ADFS plug-in for Advanced Authentication 5.x.

For 6.0, you can use the new ADFS MFA plug-in. For more information see the *Configuring the Advanced Authentication Server for ADFS Plug-in* guide.

AdminUI Event

Use this event to access the Administration portal. You can configure the chains that can be used to get access to the `/admin` URL.

IMPORTANT: You must be careful when changing the default chains that are assigned to this event. You may block the access to the Administration portal.

NOTE: You can promote users or group of users from a repository to the **FULL ADMINS** role in Repositories > Local. After this, you must assign chains in which the methods are enrolled for users with the **AdminUI** event (at a minimum with an LDAP Password).

WARNING: If you have enabled the Google reCAPTCHA policy for the Admin UI event, you must consider the following guidelines. Otherwise, a deadlock scenario can happen and you will not be able to access the Administration portal without the cluster re-installation:

- If the site key or secret key gets deleted at the Google server, you will not be able to get the same site key or secret key. The site key and secret key used on the Administration portal are no more valid and there is no way to bypass the reCaptcha on the Administration portal.
- If you have registered the reCAPTCHA for one domain name and you change the domain name or migrate the Advanced Authentication server to another domain name, the site key or secret key used on the Administration portal are no more valid.

Authentication Agent Event

Configure the settings of this event to enable a login to the Authentication Agent on Windows Client.

Authenticators Management Event

Use this event to access the Self-Service portal. In the Self-Service portal, users can enroll to any of the methods that are configured for any chain and they are a member of the group assigned to the chain.

Add an **LDAP Password** chain as the last chain in the list of chains to ensure secure access to the portal for users who have methods enrolled.

IMPORTANT: If the Administration portal uses a repository that does not have any user, you must enable a chain with **Password** only (Authenticators Management - Password) for this event. This action enables you accessing the Self-Service portal or changing the password in the Self-Service portal.

You can also perform basic authentication with Advanced Authentication. To achieve basic authentication, set the **Allow basic authentication** option to **ON** in the **Event Edit** screen for Authenticators Management.

NOTE: The basic authentication is supported only for the **Authentication Management** event and for the Password, LDAP Password, and HOTP methods.

You must specify `/basic` with the URL to login to the enrollment page. The Login page appears and the format of the Username you must provide is: `username:PASSWORD|LDAP_PASSWORD|HOTP:1.` For example: `admin:PASSWORD:1`.

When you log in to the Self Service portal, by default the chain with the highest priority is displayed. To display the other chains with the enrolled methods, set **Show chain selection** to **ON**.

NOTE: If you enable to show the chain selection, but a chain is not displayed in the list of available chains in the Self-Service portal, ensure that all the methods of the chain are enrolled by the user.

For more information, see "Managing Authenticators" in the *Advanced Authentication- User* guide.

Helpdesk Event

Configure the settings of this event to enable the Helpdesk administrator to access the Helpdesk portal. One of the roles of a Helpdesk administrator is to set an emergency password for users. An emergency password is a temporary password for users when they lose their smart card or smart phone. Some companies restrict self-enrollment and have the Helpdesk administrator who does the enrollment after hiring. You can promote the repository administrators or users as Helpdesk administrators in the **Repositories > LOCAL > Edit > Global Roles > ENROLL ADMINS** section.

You can manage the enrollment and re-enrollment of the authenticators in one of the following ways:

- Restrict the self-enrollment and force users to enroll through the Helpdesk.

  Or

- Restrict only the re-enrollment or deletion of authenticator from the Self-Service portal using the Disable re-enrollment option.

For more information, see "Managing Authenticators" in the *Advanced Authentication- Helpdesk Administrator* guide.

Helpdesk User Event

Configure the settings of this event to enable the Helpdesk administrator to authenticate users in the Helpdesk portal. This event is applicable for the **User to manage** screen that appears on the Helpdesk portal.

You must enable the **Ask credentials of management user** option in the Helpdesk Options policy before using this event.

Linux Logon Event

Configure the settings of this event to enable login to the Linux Client. If you want to use Linux Client on non-domain joined workstations, change the **Event type** from **OS Logon (domain)** to **OS Logon (local)**.

Mac OS Logon Event

Configure the settings of this event to enable login to the Mac OS Client. If you want to use Mac OS Client on non-domain joined workstations, change the **Event type** from **OS Logon (domain)** to **OS Logon (local)**.

Mainframe Logon Event

Configure the settings of this event to enable login to the Mainframe system.

NAM Event

Configure the settings of this event to facilitate the integration of Advanced Authentication with NetIQ Access Manager (https://www.netiq.com/products/access-manager/).

NCA Event

Configure the settings of this event to facilitate the integration of Advanced Authentication with NetIQ CloudAccess (https://www.netiq.com/products/cloudaccess/). CloudAccess must be configured to use Advanced Authentication as an authentication card and user stores must be added for the repositories for the integration to work. For more information, see the Advanced Authentication CloudAccess documentation.

RADIUS Server Event

The Advanced Authentication server contains a built-in RADIUS server to authenticate any RADIUS client using one of the chains configured for the event. For more information about configuring the RADIUS Server event, see “RADIUS Server”.

Report Logon Event

Configure the settings of this event to log in to the Advanced Authentication Reporting portal. For more information about the Reporting portal, see “Reporting”.

Search Card Event

Configure the settings of this event to log in to the Advanced Authentication Search Card portal. The Search Card functionality helps you to get the card holder's contact information by inserting the card in the card reader. For more information about searching a card holder's information, see "Searching a Card Holder's Information".

Tokens Management Event

Configure the settings of this event to log in to the Advanced Authentication Tokens Management portal. The Tokens Management functionality allows you to assign each token to specific user. For more information about assigning a token to user, see "".

Windows Logon Event

Configure the settings of this event to log in to the Windows Client.

Creating a Customized Event

You can create customized events for the following.

- Third-party integrations.
- When you must use Windows Client or Linux PAM Client, or Mac OS X Client on both the domain joined and non-domain workstations and you must have a separate event to use the non-domain mode.
- For integrations using SAML 2.0 and OAUTH 2.0.
- To create more than one RADIUS Server event.

You can create the following types of customized events:

- Generic
- OS Logon (domain)
- OAuth2
- SAML2
- RADIUS

Creating a Generic Event

You can create a generic event for Windows Client, Mac OS X Client, and Linux PAM Client workstation when these clients are not joined or bound to a domain.

Perform the following steps to create a generic event:

1. Click **Events** > **Add**.
2. Specify a name for the event.
3. Set **Is enabled** to **ON**.
4. Select **Generic** in the **Event type**.
5. Select the **Authenticator category.** The **Authenticator category** option is displayed only if you have added categories in the "Event Categories" policy.

6 Select the chains that you want to assign to the current event.

7 If you want to restrict access of some endpoints to the event, add all the endpoints that must have access to the **Endpoint whitelist**. The remaining endpoints are blacklisted automatically. If you leave the **Endpoints whitelist** blank, all the endpoints will be considered for authentication.

8 Set **Geo-fencing** to **ON** to enable geo-fencing. Move the permitted zones from **Available** to **Used**. For more information about configuring geo-fencing, see the Smartphone method.

IMPORTANT: You must enable the Geo Fencing Options policy to use the geo fencing functionality.

---

9 Set **Bypass user lockout in repository** to **ON**, if you want to allow users who are locked on repository to authenticate on the Advanced Authentication. By default, **Bypass user lockout in repository** is set to **OFF** and users who are locked on repository are not allowed to authenticate.

10 Click **Save.**

NOTE: When you create a custom event, you must specify the custom event in the configuration file of the related endpoints. For more information, see the *Advanced Authentication- Linux PAM Client*, *Advanced Authentication - Mac OS X Client*, or *Advanced Authentication - Windows Client* guides related to the specific endpoint.

Creating an OS Logon (Domain) Event

You can create this event when the third-party application needs to read password of a user after authentication. For example, when Windows Client, Mac OS X Client, or Linux PAM Client workstation is joined or bound to a domain, the third-party application must read the password of the user.

The steps to create an **OS Logon (domain)** event are similar to the Generic event.

Creating an OAuth 2.0 Event

You can create this event for third-party integrations with OAuth 2.0.

To create an **OAuth 2** event, perform the following steps:

1 Click **Events** > **Add**.

2 Specify a name for the event.

3 Set **Is enabled** to **ON**.

4 Select **OAuth2** in the **Event type**.

5 Select the **Authenticator category.** The **Authenticator category** option is displayed only if you have added categories in the "Event Categories" policy.

6 Select the chains that you want to assign to the current event.

7 Specify the **Redirect URIs**. The **Client ID** and **Client secret** are generated automatically. The **Client ID, Client secret**, and **Redirect URI** are consumed by the consumer web application. After successful authentication, the redirect URI web page specified in the event is displayed.

8 In **Advanced Settings**, perform the following actions:

- Set the **Use for Owner Password Credentials** option to **ON**, if the consumer web application provides authorization in the form of Resource Owner Password Credentials Grant.
- Set the option to **OFF**, if the consumer web application provides authorization in the form of Authorization Code Grant or Implicit Grant.

NOTE: If option is set to **ON**, you can use only the **LDAP Password only** chain for this event. It is recommended to use separate events for Resource Owner Password Credentials Grant (**Use for Owner Password Credentials** > **ON**) and Authorization Code Grant / Implicit Grant (**Use for Owner Password Credentials** > **OFF**).

9 Set **Bypass user lockout in repository** to **ON**, if you want to allow users who are locked on repository to authenticate on the Advanced Authentication. By default, **Bypass user lockout in repository** is set to **OFF** and users who are locked on repository are not allowed to authenticate.

10 Click **Save.**

After you have created an **OAuth 2** event, perform the following steps to access the consumer web application:

1 Specify the **Client ID**, **Client secret**, and **redirect URIs** in the consumer web application.

2 Specify the appliance end point (authorization end point) in the web application. For example, `https://<Appliance IP>/osp/a/TOP/auth/oauth2/grant`.

3 Authenticate with the required authentication method(s) to access the consumer web application.

NOTE: Authorization is provided in the form of Authorization Code Grant or Implicit Grant or Resource Owner Password Credentials Grant.

Creating a SAML 2.0 Event

You can create this event for third-party integrations with SAML 2.0.

1 Click **Events** > **Add**.

2 Specify a name for the event.

3 Set **Is enabled** to **ON**.

4 Select **SAML 2** in the **Event type**.

5 Select the **Authenticator category.** The **Authenticator category** option is displayed only if you have added categories in the "Event Categories" policy.

6 Select the chains that you want to assign to the current event.

7 In **SAML 2.0 settings,** perform the following:

NOTE: You must configure the Web Authentication policy for the SAML 2.0 event to work appropriately.

7a You can either insert your Service Provider's SAML 2.0 metadata in **SP SAML 2.0 metadata** or click **Browse** and select a Service Provider's SAML 2.0 metadata XML file to upload it.

7b Set the **Send E-Mail as NameID (suitable for G-Suite)** option to **ON** for integrating with the G-suite.

7c Set the **Send SAMAccount as NameID** option to **ON** to send **SAMAccountName** in the **NameID** attribute as a SAML response from the Advanced Authentication server.

This option must be enabled for the integration with CyberArk.

WARNING: You can set **Send SAMAccount as NameID** to **ON** only when the **Send E-Mail as NameID (suitable for G-Suite)** option is turned **OFF**.

7d Set **Bypass user lockout in repository** to **ON**, if you want to allow users who are locked on repository to authenticate on the Advanced Authentication. By default, **Bypass user lockout in repository** is set to **OFF** and users who are locked on repository are not allowed to authenticate.

8 Click **Save.**

Creating a RADIUS Event

When you want to add multiple RADIUS clients, you can add them to the predefined RADIUS Server event. But all the RADIUS clients will use the same authentication chain(s). If you want to configure specific authentication chain(s) for different RADIUS clients, then you must create a custom RADIUS event. To add a custom RADIUS event, perform the following steps:

1 Click **Events** > **Add**.

2 Specify a name for the event.

3 Ensure that **Is enabled** is set to **ON**.

4 Select **RADIUS** from **Event Type**.

5 Select the chains that you want to assign to the event.

6 Select **RADIUS** from **Endpoint whitelist**.

7 Click **Add** to add and assign a RADIUS Client to the event:

7a Specify the IP address of the RADIUS Client in **IP Address**.

7b Specify the RADIUS Client name in **Name**.

7c Specify the RADIUS Client secret and confirm the secret.

7d Ensure that the RADIUS Client is set to **ON**.

7e Click to save the RADIUS Client.

7f Add more RADIUS Clients if required.

8 Specify **NAS ID** for the RADIUS event and use the same NAS ID on the configured RADIUS clients to associate them with the custom RADIUS event.

NAS ID is a unique identifier to map RADIUS clients to the custom RADIUS event.

NOTE: While configuring the predefined RADIUS Server event, NAS ID is optional. But while adding a custom RADIUS event, it is required to specify NAS ID that is used to map RADIUS clients with the custom RADIUS event.

9 Set **Bypass user lockout in repository** to **ON**, if you want to allow users who are locked on repository to authenticate on the Advanced Authentication. By default, **Bypass user lockout in repository** is set to **OFF** and users who are locked on repository are not allowed to authenticate.

10 Click **Save**.

8 Managing Endpoints

Endpoints are devices where the Advanced Authentication server authenticates. An endpoint can be a Windows workstation for Windows Client endpoint, or Advanced Authentication Access Manager appliance for the NAM endpoint and so on.

The endpoints are automatically added when you install a plug-in such as NAM or install Windows Client. The RADIUS endpoint, an OSP endpoint that is used for WebAuth authentication, and Endpoint41 and Endpoint42 are the predefined endpoints.

NOTE: Endpoint41 and Endpoint42 are created for the integration with legacy NAM and NCA plug-ins, which are used in NAM 4.2 and earlier versions with Advanced Authentication 5.1.

The NAM and NCA plug-ins work with the hard coded endpoint ID and secret. In Advanced Authentication 5.2 and later, you must register the endpoints. This breaks the backward compatibility with old plug-ins. These two legacy endpoints allow to keep the old plug-ins working.

To configure an endpoint for Advanced Authentication, perform the following steps:

1. In the **Endpoints** section, click **Edit** against the endpoint you want to edit.
2. You can rename the endpoint, change its description or endpoint type.
3. Set **Is enabled** to **ON** to enable the endpoint.
4. Set **Is trusted** to **ON** if the endpoint is trusted. In some integrations such as Migration Tool, Password Filter, NAM, and NCA you must enable the **Is trusted** option for their endpoints.
5. Specify an **Endpoint Owner** if you have configured a specific chain to be used by the Endpoint owner only. This is a user account that must be able to use a different chain than the other users for authentication.

   The Endpoint Owner feature is supported for Windows Client, Mac OS Client, and Linux PAM Client only.

   NOTE: Additional information such as **Operating System**, **Software** version, **Last session** time and **Device** information are displayed. Also in **Advanced properties,** RAM information is displayed.

   Advanced Authentication Windows Client 5.6 or newer, Advanced Authentication Linux PAM Client 6.0 or newer, Advanced Authentication Mac OS X Client 6.0 or newer must be installed on the endpoint.

   ---
6. Click **Save**.

You can create an endpoint manually. This endpoint can be used for the third-party applications that do not create endpoints.

To create an endpoint manually, perform the following steps:

1. In the **Endpoints** section, click **Add**.
2. On the **Add endpoint** page, specify a **Name** of the endpoint and its **Description**.
3. Set the **Type** to **Other**.
4. Set **Is enabled** to **ON**.

5 Set **Is trusted** to **ON** if the endpoint is trusted.

6 Leave **Endpoint Owner** blank.

7 Click **Save**. The **New Endpoint secret** window is displayed.

8 Take down the values specified in **Endpoint ID** and **Endpoint Secret** and place them in a secure place in your application.

NOTE: You will not be able to get the **Endpoint ID** and **Endpoint Secret** later on the appliance.

9 Click **OK**.

NOTE: **Tenancy settings** are not supported for Endpoints.

IMPORTANT: You must ensure not to remove an endpoint that has at least one component running on it such as Windows Client, Logon Filter, RD Gateway plug-in, or ADFS plug-in. Endpoint is removed automatically when you uninstall Windows Client. However you must remove the endpoint manually when you uninstall Logon Filter, RD Gateway plug-in or ADFS plug-in.

If you remove an endpoint accidentally, ensure to remove the records with prefix **endpoint*** from the `%ProgramData%\NetIQ\Windows Client\config.properties` file and re-start the machine. This recreates the endpoint.

9 Configuring Policies

Policies contain configuration settings for the Advanced Authentication methods, events, and so on. For example, to use the **Email OTP** method, you must configure the server and port settings in the **Mail sender** policy and to use the Multitenancy mode, you must enable the **Multitenancy options** policy.

Advanced Authentication provides the following policies:

- “Authenticator Management Options Policy” on page 106
- “Cache Options Policy” on page 107
- “Custom Messages” on page 107
- “Custom CSS” on page 112
- “Delete Me Options” on page 113
- “Endpoint Management Options” on page 113
- “Event Categories” on page 114
- “Geo Fencing Options” on page 115
- “Google reCAPTCHA Options” on page 115
- “Helpdesk Options” on page 116
- “Linked Chains” on page 117
- “Lockout Options” on page 117
- “Login Options” on page 118
- “Logon Filter for Active Directory” on page 119
- “Mail Sender” on page 119
- “Password Filter for Active Directory” on page 121
- “Reporting Options” on page 121
- “SMS Sender” on page 122
- “Services Director Options” on page 125
- “Users Synchronization Options” on page 125
- “Voice Sender” on page 125
- “Web Authentication” on page 127

To configure a policy, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Policies** in the Administration portal.
2. Click the **Edit** icon against the policy you want to configure.
   You can also double-click on the policy to edit the configuration.
3. Make the required changes for a specific policy.
4. Click **Save**.

IMPORTANT: The configured policies are applied for all the Advanced Authentication servers.

Authenticator Management Options Policy

This policy allows you to configure the following two settings:

- "Enabling Sharing of Authenticators for the Helpdesk Administrators" on page 106
- "Disabling Re-Enrollment of the Authenticators in the Self-Service Portal" on page 106

Enabling Sharing of Authenticators for the Helpdesk Administrators

This setting allows a user to authenticate with his or her authenticator to another user's account. The helpdesk administrator can share an authenticator of one user with another user.

To enable sharing authenticators, set **Enable sharing of authenticators** to **ON**.

The account of an helpdesk administrator must be added to the **SHAREAUTH ADMINS** group to grant privilege to share the authenticators. For more information about how to allow the helpdesk administrators to share authenticators, see "Local Repository".

NOTE: Shared authenticators work only in the online mode. Cached login does not work for the shared authenticators. The supported methods for sharing authenticators are TOTP, HOTP, Password, Fingerprint, Card, and FIDO U2F.

For more information, see "Sharing Authenticators"in the *Advanced Authentication- Helpdesk Administrator* guide.

Disabling Re-Enrollment of the Authenticators in the Self-Service Portal

This setting allows you to restrict users from re-enrolling, editing, and deleting the enrolled authenticators in the Self-Service portal.

NOTE: This setting disables re-enrollment and removal of the authenticators only in the Self-Service portal. The setting has no effect on the Helpdesk portal.

To disable re-enrollment or removal of authenticators, set **Disable re-enrollment** to **ON**.

WARNING: If you access the Administration portal with a local user credentials such as **local\admin**, you might get into a lockout situation. This can happen when the administrator's password expires and it is not possible to change the password through the Self-Service portal. Therefore, to use the **Disable re-enrollment** option, you must configure the access of a repository account to the Administration portal. To do this:

- Add authorized users or a group of users from a repository to the **FULL ADMINS** role.
- Assign chains, which contain methods that are enrolled for users, to the **AdminUI** event (at a minimum with an LDAP Password method).

Cache Options Policy

In this policy, you can disable the local caching of authenticators. The policy is supported for Windows Client, Mac OS X Client, and Linux PAM Client for chains that use the methods: LDAP Password, Password, HOTP, TOTP, Smartphone (offline mode), Card, FIDO U2F, Fingerprint, and PKI.

This policy allows you to configure the following settings:

- By default, the **Enable local caching** option is enabled. To disable the caching, set the option to **OFF** and click **Save**.

  The caching functionality enables the storing of credentials on the Client for offline authentication, when the Advanced Authentication server is not available. Therefore, a user who has successfully logged in once to the server with the authentication, can now login with the offline authentication.

- By default, the **Cache expire time** is set to 0, to indicate that the cache never expires. Use the **Cache expire time** option to set the duration (in hours) to store user authenticators in Client cache. The maximum expiry time that you can set is 24 * 366 (8784 hours). This setting is applicable for the Advanced Authentication Clients.

  When a user logs in with cached authenticators, Advanced Authentication compares the last online login time with the current offline authentication time. If the time duration is less than or equal to the specified duration in **Cache expire time**, the user is authenticated to Clients.

  For example, consider the **Cache expire time** is set to 2 hours. The last online log in time of the user to Client is 1:00 PM. When the user tries to log in to Windows Client using cached authenticator credentials at 2:30 PM, the authentication is successful and the user is logged in to Windows Client. But, if the user tries to log in with cached authenticator credentials at 4:00 PM, the offline authentication fails and displays the following message as the cache has expired.

  ```
  Authenticators of <user name> were not cached. Press OK and try again to log in as local user or cached user
  ```

NOTE: You can use the enforced cached logon instead of the default online logon, to improve the logon and unlock speed on Clients. For more information, refer to the following topics:

- For Linux, see "Configuring the Enforced Cached Login" in the "*Advanced Authentication- Linux PAM Client*" guide.
- For mac OS, see "Configuring the Enforced Cached Logon" in the "*Advanced Authentication - Mac OS X Client*" guide.
- For Windows, see "Configuring the Enforced Cached Login" in the "*Advanced Authentication - Windows Client*" guide.

Custom Messages

In this policy, you can customize the error messages, method message and prompt message of a specific language.

For example, you can customize the default logon error message in English to `Your login failed.` In the Self-Service portal, when the user specifies wrong user name, the customized error message is displayed.

To customize the messages, perform the following tasks:

- Customizing Messages in the Custom Localization File
- Customizing a Specific Message on the Portal

NOTE: The customized messages are cached in the Advanced Authentication server. The refresh interval for custom messages is one hour. Therefore, when you customize a message or upload a custom localization file, the respective message is displayed on the corresponding Advanced Authentication portals after an hour.

You can also perform the following tasks in the **Custom Messages** policy:

- Customize the authentication request message displayed on the app. For more information, see Customizing Authentication Request Message For Smartphone Method.
- Customize the prompt messages of authentication methods for RADIUS event. For more information, see Customizing Prompt Messages of the Authentication Methods for RADIUS Event.
- Customize message on the clients. For more information, see Customizing the Messages for Clients.

Customizing Messages in the Custom Localization File

To customize preferred messages using the **Custom localization** file, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Custom Messages**.
2. Perform one of the following action to download the custom localization file on your local drive:
   - Click **Download original** to save the `custom_messages.tar.gz` file that contains the default messages.
   - If you have customized the messages, click **Download current messages** to save the `current_custom_messages.tar.gz` file that contains the latest messages.
3. Extract the files from the `custom_messages.tar.gz` file.
4. Navigate to the preferred language folder.

   To customize English messages, use the `custom_messages.pot` file and for other languages use the `custom_messages.po` file.
5. Open the `custom_messages.pot` file in the text format.
6. Specify the message in the `msgstr ""`.

```
msgctxt "errors.user_not_found"
msgid "User not found"
msgstr ""

msgctxt "method.swisscom.user_should_accept_request"
msgid "The user should accept your request with his/her mobile phone"
msgstr ""

msgctxt "method.messaging.cannot_determine_recipient_address"
msgid "Cannot determine OTP recipient address"
msgstr ""

msgctxt "method.virtual_password.password_will_expire"
msgid "Password will expire after ${days} days"
msgstr "Password will expire in ${days} days"

msgctxt "method.emergency_password.password_is_not_effective"
msgid "Emergency password is not effective yet. Wait ${wait_days} day(s)"
msgstr ""
```

7 Save the changes.

8 Compress the `custom_messages` folder to `.tar.gz` or `.zip` format.

9 Click **Browse** and select the compressed `custom_messages` file from the local drive.

10 Click **Upload**.

Customizing a Specific Message on the Portal

To customize a specific message on the portal, perform the following steps:

1 Click **Custom Messages**.

2 Use the **Message filter** to search for a specific message or you can find the preferred message manually.

3 Use the **Message Group** to search a specific message by group. Options available are **All**, **Method messages**, **Error messages**, and **Other messages**.

4 Click the **Edit** icon next to the preferred message. You can also double-click on the message to edit the content.

5 Specify the message in the preferred language.

6 Click **Save**.

Customizing Authentication Request Message For Smartphone Method

You can customize the authentication request message that is displayed on the NetIQ Auth app when user initiates Smartphone authentication. The authentication can be either to the endpoint or to the Advanced Authentication portals.

To customize the message for smartphone method, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Custom Messages**.
2. Search for one of the following keys:
   - `method.smartphone.authentication_hint` to edit the request message specific to endpoint authentication.
   - `method.smartphone.authentication_hint_no_endpoint` to edit the request message for any authentication that does not use endpoint such as Advanced Authentication portals login.
3. Click for the preferred key.
4. Specify any of the following parameters in the preferred language message as per your requirement:
   - `{user}` to fetch the user name.
   - `{client_ip}` to fetch the client IP address.
   - `{event}` to fetch the event name.
   - `{tenant}` to fetch the tenant name.
   - `{endpoint}` to fetch the endpoint name.
5. Click **Save**.

NOTE: The customized authentication request message will reflect on the NetIQ smartphone app after an approximate delay of one hour.

For example, to customize the endpoint specific authentication message for the smartphone method you must search the key `method.smartphone.authentication_hint` and specify the message `{user} requested for authentication request from the client {client_ip} for the {event} to access the {endpoint}` in the field corresponding to English language. When the user tries to authenticate to Windows Client using the smartphone method then the customized message is displayed on the NetIQ smartphone app as:

```
Bob requested for authentication request from the client 10.3.10.5 for the Windows
logon to access the Windows-machine-589.
```

Customizing Prompt Messages of the Authentication Methods for RADIUS Event

You can customize prompt messages of the authentication methods that are configured for the RADIUS event. The customized prompt messages are displayed when a user initiates authentication to the RADIUS event using the configured methods.

To customize prompt message, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Custom Messages**.
2. Use the **Message filter** to search for a specific prompt message or you can find the preferred message manually.

   For example, specify `radius.totp.prompt` to search the prompt message displayed on RADIUS client for the TOTP method.

3. Click the Edit icon or double-click on the preferred message to edit the content.
4. Specify the message in the preferred language on the **Edit Customer Message** page.
5. Click **Save**.

For example, consider Thomas, an administrator, wants to customize the default prompt message of the Voice OTP method that is configured for the RADIUS event. Thomas must first search the key `radius.voice_otp.prompt` and modify the message to `Specify the OTP that you heard from the voice call` in the text box corresponding to English.

When Mark, an end user tries to authenticate to RADIUS event using the Voice OTP method, the customized prompt message is displayed.

Customizing the Messages for Clients

You can customize the error messages, method message and prompt message specific to any authentication method that is displayed on endpoints such as Windows, Linux PAM, and Mac OS Clients.

To customize the message for clients, perform the following steps:

1. Copy the `aucore_custom.zip` custom localization file from one of the following path based on the Client:
   - **Windows**: `C:\Program Files\NetIQ\Windows Client\locale\`
   - **Linux PAM**: `/opt/pam_aucore/locale/`
   - **Mac OS X**: `Library/Security/SecurityAgentPlugins/aucore_login.bundle/Contents/Resources/aucore/locale`
2. Navigate to **Policies > Custom Messages** in the Administration portal.
3. Click **Choose file** and select the custom localization file.
4. Click **Upload**.

   NOTE: You can find the messages specific to the Clients with the prefix `client.` in the **Key**.

5. Search a specific message using the **Message filter** or find the preferred message manually.

   For example, specify `client.method.smartcard.waiting_for_card` to search the prompt message displayed for the Card method on all clients.

6 Click **Edit** next to the preferred message. You can also double-click on the message to edit the content.

7 Specify the message in the preferred language.

8 Click **Save**.

NOTE: The customized messages reflect on the respective Clients after an approximate delay of one hour. However, after the first online log in to the Client, users can view the customized messages.

For example, consider Thomas, an administrator wants to customize the default method message (`Enter one-time password`) of the TOTP method that for all clients. Thomas must first search the key `client.method.totp.password` and modify the default message to `Specify the OTP that is displayed on Token or App` in the text box corresponding to English language.

When Mark, an end user tries to authenticate to Linux PAM Client using the TOTP method, the customized method message is displayed.

Custom CSS

This policy allows you to use a customized css for all the Advanced Authentication portals.

To use a customized css, perform the following steps:

1 Place the css file in **Content**.

For example, you can place the following sample css file.

```
body {
   color: #000000;
   background-image: url("http://cgcreative.com/videos/poster/
MicroFocus_2017_Brand_Cutdown_AMC_01.jpg") !important;
}

.skin-ias .main-header {
    background: linear-gradient(90deg,#0ecce4,#5c1bd7);
    color: #ffffff;
}

table.table-hover tr:hover td {
   background-color: #808080;
}

.skin-ias .sidebar-menu li a:hover  {
   background-color: #808080;
}

.skin-ias .sidebar-menu li.active.open {
   background-color: #D3D3D3;
}

.content-wrapper {
   color: #000000;
   background: transparent !important;
}

.well {
   background: transparent !important;
   border: 0px;
```

```
   border-radius: 0px;
   box-shadow: none;
}

.box  {
   color: #000000;
   background: transparent !important;
}

.main-footer {
   color: #000000;
   background: transparent !important;
}

.auth .content .login {
   background: transparent !important;
}

.auth .content .login .header-row {
   background: #ffffff;
}
```

2 Click **Save**.

To revert the changes, remove the custom code from **Content** and click **Save**.

Delete Me Options

In this policy, you can configure settings that enable deleting all the user data from the server, including the enrolled methods.

When you set **Enable the Delete me policy** to **ON,** the users can view the **Delete me** option in a drop-down by clicking on the user name on the top-right corner of the Self-Service portal.

NOTE: To comply with General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR), you must set the **Enable the Delete me policy** option to **ON**.

Endpoint Management Options

In this policy, you can configure the following settings for managing an endpoint:

- **Require the administrator password to register an endpoint or workstation**: Set this option to **ON** for registering an untrusted endpoint from any IP address. Typically, this option is configured along with **Whitelist IP address**.

  You must disable the option when installing any components from the Advanced Authentication distributives package that uses endpoints (Advanced Authentication Windows Client, Mac OS X Client, Linux PAM Client, Logon Filter, and RDG plug-in). Otherwise, the endpoints are not created. You must use the option for third-party integrations only.
- **Whitelist IP Address**: Add the preferred IP addresses to the **Whitelist IP Address** to register either a trusted or an untrusted endpoint from these IP addresses. You can add a single IP address, multiple IP addresses, or a range of IP addresses to the whitelist. The IP address must be in IPv4 or IPv6 format.

The following conditions summarizes the use of endpoint management options:

- **Whitelist IP Address** is empty and **Require the administrator password to register an endpoint or workstation** is **OFF**: Untrusted endpoints can be registered from any IP address without the administrator's credentials.

  Regardless of the status of **Require the administrator password to register an endpoint or workstation** and **Whitelist IP Address** options, the administrator's credentials are required to perform the following actions:

  - To delete and update any endpoint.
  - To register a trusted endpoint.

  Endpoint registration is restricted only from those IPs that are specified in **Whitelist IP Address**.

- **Whitelist IP Address** is empty and **Require the administrator password to register an endpoint or workstation** is **ON**: The administrator's credentials are required to register an untrusted endpoint from any IP address.
- IP addresses are specified in **Whitelist IP Address** and **Require the administrator password to register an endpoint or workstation** is **ON**: The administrator's credentials are required to register untrusted endpoints only from the IP addresses specified in the whitelist.

  The endpoint registration request from any other IP address that is not specified in the whitelist is blocked automatically.

Event Categories

In this policy you can add categories, which can be used in an event to support multiple enrollments for a method. For each event, you can specify one category.

To add a category, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Event categories**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Specify a name and description for the category.
4. Click **Save**.
5. Click **Events** and edit the required event to specify the category.

   Ensure that users or helpdesk administrators enroll authenticators for the new category.

NOTE:

- You can enroll only one authenticator of one type for each category.
- The **Authenticator category** option in **Events** is not displayed when no category is created.
- The LDAP Password method is an exception. There is one LDAP password authenticator always, it can be used with any category.

Geo Fencing Options

In this policy, you can create authentication zones by drawing boundaries for a geographical location. When you enable the geo-fencing policy, users can authenticate with their Smartphones only from the allowed geographical locations.

To enable geo-fencing, set **Enable Geo-fencing** to **ON**. For more information about how to configure the geo-zones, see the "Smartphone" method.

NOTE: When you enable the **Geo-fencing options** policy, the functioning of the TOTP mode of the Smartphone method, which is used in the offline mode, is affected. An error message `TOTP login is disabled` is displayed to the users when they try to authenticate with this method.

Google reCAPTCHA Options

The **Google reCAPTCHA Options** policy helps to prevent the Advanced Authentication web portals login page from bots and to confirm that the user is a human and not a robot. This policy adds an additional layer of security before users go through multi-factor authentication. A series of images are displayed and the users must select the images for the specified condition to login.

To configure the Google reCAPTCHA for Advanced Authentication, you must perform the following configuration tasks:

- "Registering the Google reCAPTCHA Account" on page 115
- "Configuring Google reCAPTCHA for Advanced Authentication" on page 116
- "Enabling the Google reCAPTCHA Options Policy for Events" on page 116

Registering the Google reCAPTCHA Account

Before you configure Google reCAPTCHA in Advanced Authentication, you must have a Google reCAPTCHA account.

To register for the Google reCAPTCHA account, perform the following steps:

1. Log in to the Google reCAPTCHA website with your Google account.
2. Click **Get reCAPTCHA**.
3. Specify a **Label**, select **reCAPTCHA V2** from **Choose the type of reCAPTCHA.**
4. Specify the `IP address` or the domain name of the Advanced Authentication server in **Domain**.
5. Accept the terms of Google reCAPTCHA.
6. Click **Register**.
7. Copy the **Site key** and **Secret key** to configure reCAPTCHA in Advanced Authentication. For more information, see Configuring Google reCAPTCHA for Advanced Authentication.

   NOTE: If you forget the generated secret key, you can retrieve it from your Google account.

WARNING: If you have enabled the Google reCAPTCHA policy for the Admin UI event, you must consider the following guidelines. Otherwise, a deadlock scenario can happen and you will not be able to access the Administration portal without the cluster re-installation:

- If the site key or secret key gets deleted at the Google server, you will not be able to get the same site key or secret key. The site key and secret key used on the Administration portal are no more valid and there is no way to bypass the reCaptcha on the Administration portal.
- If you have registered the reCAPTCHA for one domain name and you change the domain name or migrate the Advanced Authentication server to another domain name, the site key or secret key used on the Administration portal are no more valid.

Configuring Google reCAPTCHA for Advanced Authentication

To configure Google reCAPTCHA for Advanced Authentication, perform the following steps:

1. Log in to the Administration portal.
2. Click **Policies > Google reCAPTCHA Options**.
3. Specify the **Site Key** and **Secret Key** that you received when you registered for a Google reCAPTCHA account.

   For more information about how to register the Google reCAPTCHA account, see "Registering the Google reCAPTCHA Account".
4. Click **Test** to test the policy after the configuration.
5. Click **Save**.

Enabling the Google reCAPTCHA Options Policy for Events

After you configure the Google reCAPTCHA policy, you must enable the policy for the respective events.

To enable the policy for events, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Events**.

   NOTE: You can enable the Google reCAPTCHA policy only for the Admin UI event, Authenticators Management event, Helpdesk event, Helpdesk User event, Report logon event, , Tokens Management event, and Web authentication events such as OAuth and SAML 2.0 events.
2. Set **Enable Google reCAPTCHA** to **ON**.
3. Click **Save**.

Helpdesk Options

In this policy, you can configure the following settings for the Helpdesk portal:

- **Ask for the credentials of the managed user**: Set this to **ON** to prompt the helpdesk administrator to provide the credentials of the managed user in the Helpdesk portal. This enhances security, however reduces convenience of the operations.

When this setting is enabled, the helpdesk administrator must know the users' credentials to manage their authenticators. Ensure that you have specified a chain (with all the methods of the chain enrolled for the users) for the Helpdesk User event. When you set the option to **OFF**, the user management becomes faster, but less secure.

- **Allow to unlock user accounts**: Set to **ON** to allow a helpdesk administrator to unlock users who are locked in the Advanced Authentication server local repository. Users are locked when the **Lockout options** policy is enabled. The helpdesk administrator can view and unlock the users in the Helpdesk portal under the **Locked Users** tab.
- **Allow to manage endpoints**: Set **Allow to manage endpoints** to **ON** to allow a helpdesk administrator to manage the endpoints of the Advanced Authentication server. When the helpdesk administrator logs in to the Helpdesk portal, an **Endpoints** tab is displayed where all the endpoints are listed. The helpdesk administrator can remove the endpoints. This option is disabled by default. For more information, see "Managing Endpoints".

Linked Chains

This policy allows you to perform the following settings:

- **Enable linked chains**: This policy allows users to use a simple chain within a few hours of authentication done with a high-security chain. You must enable this policy for the Require chain option while creating a chain.

  NOTE: This policy has replaced the **Last Logon Tracking Options** policy.

  For example, if a user authenticates with the `LDAP Password+Card` chain once in a day, the user can further use a linked chain with only the `Card` method without the `LDAP Password` method, or if a user authenticates with the `Fingerprint+Smartphone` chain once in every four hours, the user can authenticate once with this chain and next authentication he can use only the linked `Smartphone` chain. The duration for which he can use the linked chain depends on the grace period that you specify in the Require chain option.
- **Hide required chain**: After using the required chain within the grace period, a user will see both the required and linked chain on Windows Client, Mac Client, and Linux PAM Client. This policy allows to hide the required (high-security) chain after you authenticate once. Therefore, instead of displaying both the chains, after authenticating with the required chain, only the linked chain will be displayed. By default, this policy is disabled. Enable the policy to hide the high security chain.

Lockout Options

In this policy, you can configure settings to lock a user's account when the user reaches the maximum failure attempts of login. This enhances security by preventing the guessing of passwords and one-time passwords (OTPs).

You can configure the following options in this policy:

- **Enable**: An option to enable the lockout settings.
- **Attempts** failed: The limit of failure attempts of authentication, after which the user's account is locked. The default value is 3.
- **Lockout period**: The period within which the user's account is locked and the user cannot authenticate. The default value is 300 seconds.

- **Lock in repository**: The option to lock the user account in repository. You cannot use **Lockout period** if you enable this option. Only the system administrator must unlock the user in the repository.

  IMPORTANT: You must configure the appropriate settings in your repository for the options to function appropriately. For Active Directory Domain Services, you must enable the Account lockout threshold policy on Domain Controllers.

  For NetIQ eDirectory, you must configure the Intruder Detection properly.

After a user's account is locked (not in the repository), you can unlock the user account. To do this, click **Repositories > Edit > Locked Users** and click **Remove** against the user's account name.

The Helpdesk administrator can also unlock the locked users, if the **Allow to unlock user accounts** is enabled in the Helpdesk Options policy.

Login Options

In this policy, you can configure the settings to add default repository and ensure not to disclose valid username for malicious attack.

This policy allows you to configure the following settings:

- **Default repository**: You can add repositories that are used as default repositories. Therefore while logging in, you need not prefix the repository name before the username for authentication.

  For example, if pjones is a member of the company repository, then while logging in, instead of specifying `company\pjones`, you can specify only `pjones`.

  To add a repository as default, move the repository from **Available** to **Default** and click **Save**.
- **Username disclosure**: This option is set to **OFF** by default. It is recommended to keep default setting to prevent security vulnerabilities and to make it difficult for hackers to predict the valid username.

  If you set **Username disclosure** to **ON** and a user specifies an invalid username on the Advanced Authentication login page, an error message `User not found` is displayed. When the user specifies a valid username, the associated chain details are prompted to confirm the specified username and disclosing valid username. This can cause security vulnerability making it easy for attackers to guess the valid username.

  When this option is set to **OFF**, chain details are displayed instead of error message even though a user specifies an invalid username on the login page. A user can select a preferred authentication method. If the input data specific to the selected method is incorrect, a generic message `Invalid credentials` is displayed. This does not disclose whether username or first-factor authentication is incorrect.

  For example, a user specifies an invalid username, selects the SMS OTP method from the authentication chain. In this case, the SMS with OTP is not sent to the user. If the user specifies some random 6 digit as OTP, the server prompts an error message `Incorrect OTP password`. This helps the user to determine that specified username is valid though it is invalid.

- **LDAP caching**: This option allows you to enable or disable the caching of a user's information on the Advanced Authentication server. This information can be the lockout status of users, whether users have been disabled, or about the expiry of a user's password.

  By default, the option is set to **OFF**. This indicates that the Advanced Authentication server communicates with the LDAP server each time to check a user's information. You can enable the option to allow the caching of a user's information. Enabling the option increases the performance. However, it may also lead to security vulnerabilities. Therefore, it is recommended to set the option to **OFF**.

Logon Filter for Active Directory

In this policy you can configure settings to enable the use of Logon Filter that you must install on all the Domain Controllers in the domain and configure it. Logon Filter allows you to automatically update group membership if you login with the Advanced Authentication Windows Client.

To enable the policy, set **Enable filter** to **ON** and click **Save**.

NOTE: Before enabling the policy, you must ensure the Advanced Authentication Logon Filter is installed on all the Domain Controllers in the domain. Else, you might face problems with password validation during password synchronization on workstations that have the Windows Client installed.

For information about how to configure Logon Filter, see Configuring Logon Filter.

Mail Sender

In the **Mail sender** policy, you can configure settings for the Email OTP method to facilitate sending email messages with one-time passwords to users.

To configure the **Mail sender** settings, perform the following steps:

1 Specify the following details:

1. **Host**: The outgoing mail server name. For example, `smtp.company.com`.
2. **Port**: The port number. For example, 465.
3. **Username**: The username of an account that is used to send the authentication email messages. For example, noreply or `noreply@company.com`.
4. **Password**: The password for the specified account.
5. **Sender email**: The email address of the sender.
6. **Recipient Mask:** Specify the masked value that you want to display for the email.

   The email address of the users value is masked when users authenticate with the email method.

   NOTE: The default value is set and if you do not change the **Recipient Mask** value, the default value is considered for masking of the email address.

   ---
7. **TLS** and **SSL**: The cryptographic protocol used by the mail server.

2 You can test the configurations for the Mail sender policy in the **Test** section.

2a Specify the email address in **E-mail** to which you want to send the Email OTP.

2b Specify a message to be sent to the phone in **Message**.

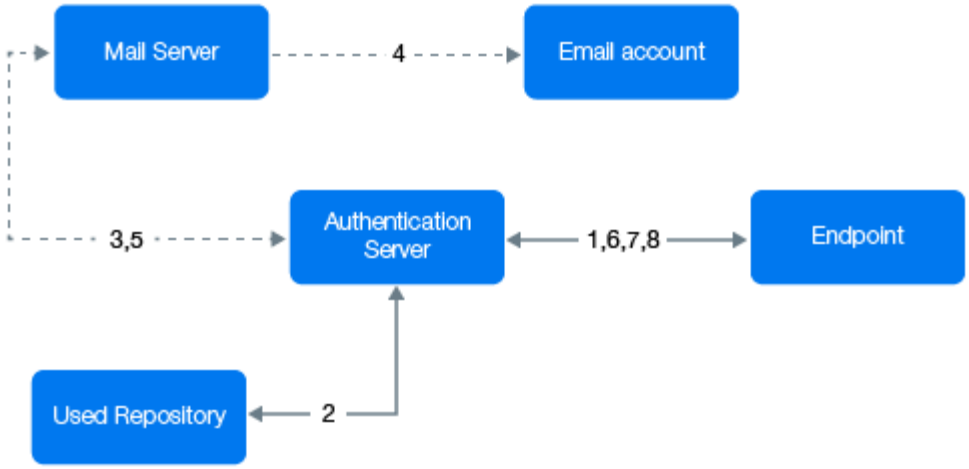
2c Click **Send test message!**.

3 Click **Save**.

Real messaging uses async sender. Ensure that you have configured a chain with the **Email OTP** method and assigned it to an event. Login to the Self-Service portal and test the Email authenticator. If it does not work, click **async log**.

Authentication Flow

The authentication flow for the Mail sender is described in the following image.



A user wants to authenticate on an endpoint such as a laptop or a website with the **Email OTP** method. The following steps describe the authentication flow:

1. When the authentication request is initiated, the endpoint contacts the Advanced Authentication server.
2. The Advanced Authentication server validates the user's credentials and gets an email address of the user from a repository.
3. Advanced Authentication server sends the request to a configured mail server to send an email message with the content that includes a one-time password (OTP) for authentication.
4. Mail server sends the message to the user's email address.
5. Mail server sends the sent signal to the Advanced Authentication server.
6. Advanced Authentication server sends a request to the user to specify an OTP on the endpoint.
7. The user specifies the OTP from the email message. The Advanced Authentication server gets the OTP.
8. Advanced Authentication server validates the authentication. The authentication is done or denied.

HTTPS protocol is used for the internal communication.

Access configuration

Advanced Authentication server - Mail Server (SMTP, outbound).

Password Filter for Active Directory

In this policy, you can configure settings to synchronize the password update between the appliance and Active Directory through the Password Filter. The Password Filter automatically updates the LDAP Password stored in Advanced Authentication, whenever the password is changed or reset in the Active Directory. This helps you to authenticate without getting any prompt to synchronize the password after it is changed or reset.

You can perform the following settings in this policy:

- Set **Update password on change** to **ON** to update the LDAP password automatically in Advanced Authentication when it is changed in the Active Directory. This helps you to authenticate without getting a prompt to synchronize the password after it is changed.

  Set **Update password on change** to **OFF** to prompt the user to synchronize the LDAP password while logging in to Windows when the password is changed in the Active Directory.
- Set **Update password on reset** to **ON** to update the LDAP password automatically in Advanced Authentication when it is it is reset in the Active Directory.This helps users to authenticate without getting a prompt to synchronize the password if it is reset.

  Set **Update password on reset** to **OFF** to prompt the user to synchronize the LDAP password while logging in to Windows when the user's password has been reset in the Active Directory.

  NOTE: If **Enable local caching** is set to **ON** in the Cache Options policy and when the password is changed or reset in the Active Directory. Then, a user is prompted to synchronize the password while logging in to Windows irrespective of the status of the following **Password Filter for AD** settings:

  - **Update password on change**
  - **Update password on reset**

  If **Enable local caching** is set to **OFF**, the Password Filter works according to the settings configured in this policy.

NOTE: Endpoint for the Password Filter must be trusted. To do this, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Endpoints** in the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.
2. Edit an endpoint of the Password Filter.
3. Set **Is trusted** to **ON** and add a description.
4. Save the changes.

Reporting Options

In this policy, you can configure settings to delete the history about the login information of users that is recorded in the reports.

Specify a value in **History max age(days)**. The default value is 30 (days). This indicates that the history about the login information of users will be recorded from the current date to the previous 30 days. Any data before that will be deleted.

SMS Sender

In this policy, you can configure the settings for the SMS OTP method. The **SMS OTP** method sends SMS messages with one-time passwords to the users. Advanced Authentication contains predefined settings for Twilio and MessageBird services.

The **Sender Service** consists of the following three options:

- Generic
- Twilio
- MessageBird

To configure SMS sender manually perform the following steps:

1. Select **Generic** in **Sender service**.
2. **Recipient Mask:** Specify the masked value that you want to display for the SMS.

   The SMS OTP of the users is masked when users authenticate with the SMS OTP method.

   NOTE: The default value is set and if you do not change the **Recipient Mask** value, the default value is considered for masking of the SMS OTP.

3. Specify a **Service URL** value. For example, Clickatell `http://api.clickatell.com/http/sendmsg?`.
4. Leave **HTTP Basic Authentication Username** and **HTTP Basic Authentication Password** blank.
5. Select **POST** from **HTTP request method**.
6. Click **Add** and create the following parameters in **HTTP request body**.
   - name: **user**

     value: name of your account
   - name: **to**

     value: {phone}
   - name: **text**

     value: {message}
   - name: **api_id**, this is a parameter that is issued after addition of an HTTP sub-product to your Clickatell account. A single account may have multiple API IDs associated with it.
   - name: **from**

     value: sender's phone number
7. Click **Add secure** and create the following parameter in **HTTP request body**.
   - Name: **password**

     Value: current password that is set on the account

   For more information about the additional parameters for Clickatell, see the Clickatell documentation (https://www.clickatell.com/developers/api-documentation/http-api-request-parameters/).

   NOTE: The parameters may differ for different SMS service providers. But the `{phone}` and `{message}` variables are mandatory.

To configure SMS sender settings for **Twilio** service, perform the following steps:

1. Select **Twilio** in **Sender service**.
2. **Recipient Mask:** Specify the masked value that you want to display for the SMS.

   The SMS OTP of the users is masked when users authenticate with the SMS OTP method.

   NOTE: The default value is set and if you do not change the **Recipient Mask** value, the default value is considered for masking of the SMS OTP.

3. Specify the following details:
   - **Account sid** and **Authentication token**: In Twilio, the Account SID acts as a username and the Authentication Token acts as a password.
   - **Use Copilot**: The copilot option is used to send SMS from a Twilio's phone number of your location. This is helpful when SMS messages have to be sent across the geographical locations. For example, with copilot, SMS will be sent from Indian phone number to the Indian users. Without copilot, SMS will be sent from US phone number to the Indian users.

     For more information on Copilot option and its features, see https://www.twilio.com/copilot#phone-number-intelligence and https://www.twilio.com/docs/api/rest/sending-messages-copilot#features.

     - **Messaging Service SID**: Service SID.
   - **Sender phone**: Sender's phone number.

For more information, see the Twilio website.

To configure SMS sender settings for **MessageBird** service, perform the following steps:

1. Select **MessageBird** in **Sender service**.
2. **Recipient Mask:** Specify the masked value that you want to display for the SMS.

   The SMS OTP of the users is masked when users authenticate with the SMS OTP method.

   NOTE: The default value is set and if you do not change the **Recipient Mask** value, the default value is considered for masking of the SMS OTP.

3. Specify the **Username**, **Password**, and **Sender name**.

For more information, see the MessageBird website.

IMPORTANT: MessageBird API v2 is not supported. To activate MessageBird API v1, perform the following steps:

1. Go to the MessageBird account.
2. Click **Developers** in the left navigation bar and open the API access tab.
3. Click **Do you want to use one of our old API's (MessageBird V1, Mollie or Lumata)? Click here**.

You can test the configurations for the SMS sender policy in the **Test** section.

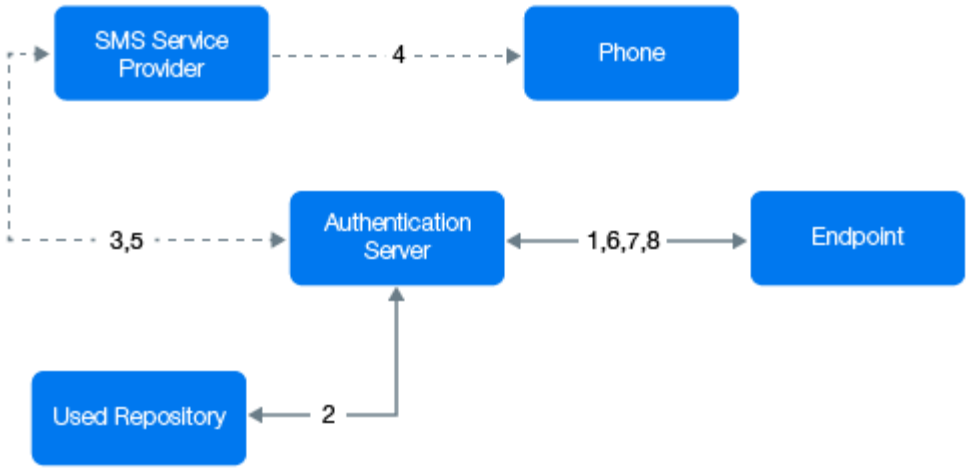
1. Specify the phone number in **Phone** to which you want to send the SMS OTP.
2. Specify a message to be sent to the phone in **Message**.
3. Click **Send test message!**.

4 Click **Save**.

Real messaging uses async sender. Ensure that you have configured a chain with the **SMS** method and assigned it to an event. Then sign-in to the Self-Service portal and test the SMS authenticator. If it does not work, see the **async** logs.

Authentication Flow

The authentication flow for the SMS sender in Advanced Authentication is described in the following image.



A user wants to authenticate on an endpoint such as a laptop or a website with the SMS method. The following steps describe the authentication flow:

1. When the authentication request is initiated, the endpoint contacts the Advanced Authentication server.
2. The Advanced Authentication server validates the user's credentials and gets a phone number of the user from a Repository.
3. Advanced Authentication server sends the request to a configured SMS Service Provider to send an SMS message with the content that includes a one-time password (OTP) for authentication.
4. SMS Service Provider sends the SMS message to the user's phone.
5. SMS Service Provider sends the 'sent' signal to the Advanced Authentication server.
6. Advanced Authentication server sends a request to the user to specify an OTP on the endpoint.
7. The user specifies the OTP from the SMS message. The Advanced Authentication server gets the OTP.
8. Advanced Authentication server then validates the authentication. The authentication is done or denied.

HTTP/HTTPS protocol is used for the communication.

Access configuration

Advanced Authentication server - SMS Service Provider (HTTP/HTTPS, outbound).

Services Director Options

In this policy, you can configure settings required to integrate with the Services Director.

Perform the following steps to configure this policy:

1. Set **Enable integration** to **ON** to enable the integration of Advanced Authentication with Services Director.
2. Specify the **Public DNS name** of Advanced Authentication, **Services Director DNS Name, Tenant administrator name,** and **Tenant administrator password** of Services Director to integrate it with Advanced Authentication.

Users Synchronization Options

In this policy, you can configure the settings to retain the deleted users or groups for the required number of days, who are deleted from an LDAP or SQL repository. The authenticators of these users are retained in the Advanced Authentication server based on the period specified. Users need not re-enroll the authenticators, if the user accounts are restored in the repository.

The authenticators are restored automatically, if the users are restored in their repository. Administrators or Helpdesk need not manage the deleted users or the authenticators.

NOTE

- The authenticators are not retained for the users who are not deleted from the repository, but just removed from a group assigned in the used chains.
- The user deleted from a repository after full synchronization is not counted in the used licenses, though the user is retained in the Advanced Authentication database.

Specify the number of days that you want to keep the users or groups who have been deleted from the repository in **Keep deleted users/groups (days)**. The default value is 60.

For example, if you specify 30 in **Keep deleted users/groups (days)**, then the authenticators of the deleted users or groups are retained for a period of 30 days in the Advanced Authentication server and after 30 days, the authenticators are deleted.

Voice Sender

In this policy, you can configure the settings for the Voice and Voice OTP methods. Advanced Authentication supports the Twilio service for the Voice methods.

To configure Voice Sender settings for **Twilio** service, perform the following steps.

1. **Recipient Mask:** Specify the masked value that you want to display for the Voice OTP.

   The Voice OTP of the users is masked when users authenticate with the Voice OTP method.

   NOTE: The default value is set and if you do not change the **Recipient Mask** value, the default value is considered for masking of the Voice OTP.

   ---

2. Specify the following details in the **Voice sender** policy:
   - **Account sid** and **Authentication token**: In Twilio, the Account SID acts as a username, and the Authentication Token acts as a password.

- **Sender phone**: The phone number of the sender.
- **Server url**: The public URL to which the Twilio service connects for authentication. You can use http protocol for testing purpose, but for production environment you must use https protocol. You must have a valid certificate when you use https.

3 You can test the configurations for the Voice sender policy in the **Test** section.

   3a Specify the phone number in **Phone** to which you want to send the Voice OTP.

   3b Specify a message to be sent to the phone in **Message**.

   3c Click **Send test message!**.

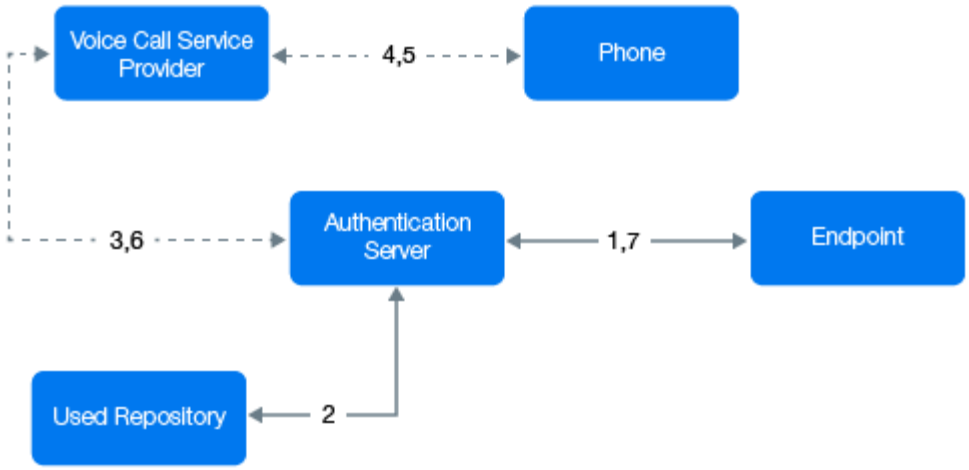
4 Click **Save**.

   Real messaging uses async sender. Ensure that you have configured a chain with the **Voice OTP** method and assigned it to an event. Then sign-in to the Self-Service portal and test the Voice authenticator. If it does not work, see the **async** logs.

IMPORTANT: The users may receive calls with the voice `Application error`. This happens because of incorrect settings or invalid certificates. Ensure that the certificate is valid and is not expired. Invalid certificates cannot be applied by Twilio.

Authentication Flow

The authentication flow for the Voice sender in Advanced Authentication is described in the following image.



A user wants to authenticate on an endpoint such as a laptop or a website with the Voice Call method. The following steps describe the authentication flow:

1 When the authentication request is initiated, the endpoint contacts the Advanced Authentication server.

2 The Advanced Authentication server validates the user's credentials and gets a phone number of the user from a repository.

3 Advanced Authentication server sends the request to a configured voice call service provider (Twilio) to call the user.

4 The voice call service provider calls the user.

5 The user picks up the phone, listens to the call, and specifies the PIN followed by the hash (#) sign.

6 Voice call provider sends the specified PIN to the Advanced Authentication server.
7 Advanced Authentication server then validates the authentication. The authentication is done or denied.

HTTP/HTTPS protocol is used for the communication.

Access configuration

Advanced Authentication server - Voice Call Service Provider (HTTP/HTTPS, inbound/ outbound).

Web Authentication

This policy replaces the **SAML 2.0 options** policy. The Web Authentication policy allows you to configure the following settings:

- Configuring Settings for the SAML 2.0 Events
- Customizing the Login Page of Web Authentication Events
- Customizing Messages and Authentication Method Names for the Web Authentication Events

Configuring Settings for the SAML 2.0 Events

You can configure the settings to specify the Identity Provider's URL to download the SAML 2.0 metadata file. The downloaded SAML 2.0 metadata file is used to configure the service provider.

For more information about configuring this policy, see "SAML 2.0".

Customizing the Login Page of Web Authentication Events

You can customize the login page of the OAuth 2.0, SAML 2.0, or Open ID Connect events. To do this, perform the following steps:

1. Set **Custom Branding** to **ON**.
2. Click **Download Template**.
3. Save the `osp-custom-resources.jar` file.
4. Unzip the `osp-custom-resources.jar` file and in the **resources** folder open the file that you want to customize.

   For example, to edit the custom branding in the English language, customize the `oidp_enduser_custom_resources_en_US.properties` file.

   NOTE: Ensure that you edit the attributes in the **Login page properties** section of the `oidp_enduser_custom_resources_en_US.properties` file for the custom branding of the login pages in the English language.

5. After you edit the specific file in the **resources** folder, zip the file `osp-custom-resources.jar`.
6. Click **Browse** to upload the `osp-custom-resources.jar` file in the Web Authentication policy.
7. Click **Save**.

NOTE: When you upload the custom branding changes for the first time, you must restart the Advanced Authentication server to reflect the changes on the login pages of the web authentication events. This is applicable per tenant.

You can also add your customized .css file in the **css** folder of the `osp-custom-resources.jar` file.

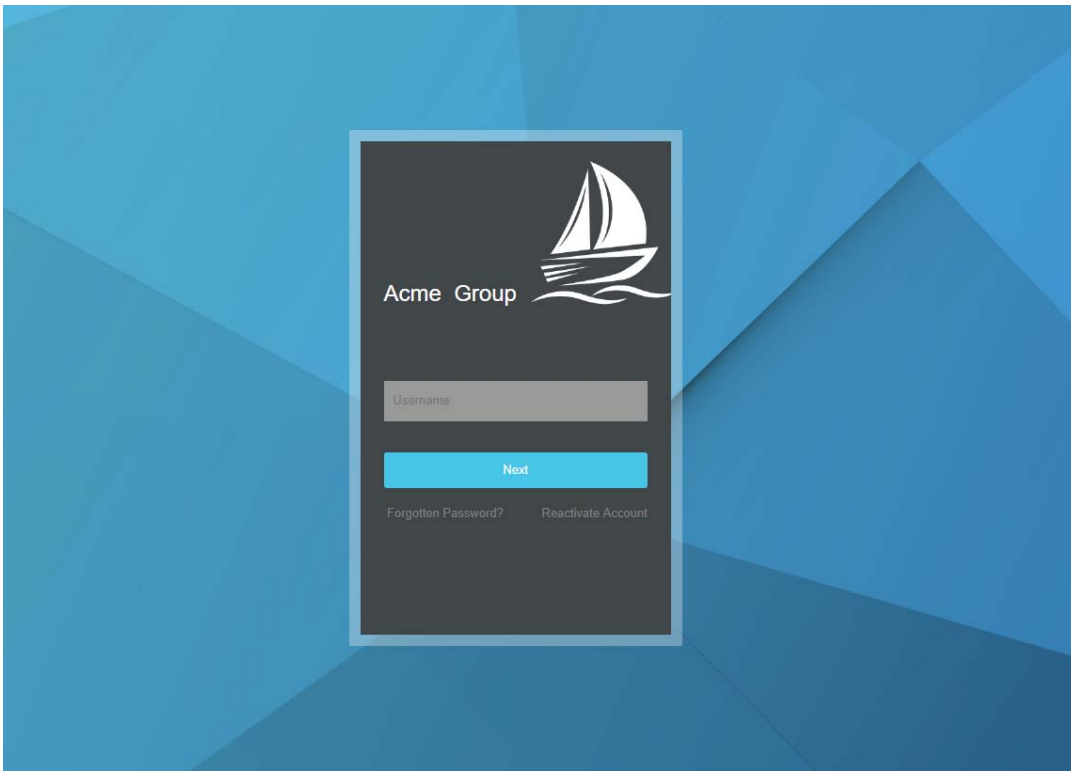
The following section describes an example of the customization that you can achieve for the Web authentication.

Example of Customizing a Login Page

To achieve the customized login page in the Figure 9-1 for Acme Group of company, you can perform the following:

- "Adding a Customized CSS for the Login Page" on page 128
- "Customizing the Logo of an Enterprise" on page 131
- "Customizing the Copyrights" on page 132
- "Customizing the Branding Text" on page 132
- "Adding Links on the Login Page" on page 133

Figure 9-1 *Customized Page for Acme Group*



Adding a Customized CSS for the Login Page

You can add a customized css file to reflect changes for the login pages.

The following sample.css file has been customized for achieving the customized login page in Figure 9-1 for the Acme Group of company.

```
/* general styles
------------------------------- */
body {
margin:0;
  padding:0;
background:#fff url("/osp/TOP/images/login_bg.jpg") no-repeat center center fixed;
  -webkit-background-size: cover;
-moz-background-size: cover;
  -o-background-size: cover;
background-size: cover;
  font-family:Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif;
}
img {
border:none;
  max-width: 100%;
}
/* login box
------------------------------- */
div.page-container {
position:absolute;
  top: 50%;
left: 0px;
  width:100%;
margin:-265px auto 0 auto;
}
div.dialog {
  border: 12px solid rgba(255, 255, 255, 0.3);
border-radius: 2px;
  width: 318px;
max-width:100%;
  margin:0 auto;
background-color: transparent;
}
div.dialog-content {
  height:525px;
padding:0 15px;
  background:url(/osp/TOP/images/acme.png);
background-color:#414749 ;
  background-position:180px 20px;
background-repeat:no-repeat;
  font-family: Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif;
text-align: left;
  }
.dialog-header {
  margin:0;
padding: 150px 0 40px 0;
  color:#48c6e7;
font-size:22px;
  font-weight:100;
background: none;
}
div.dialog-header-content {
  display:block;
color:#fff;
  font-weight: 200;
}
p { margin:0; padding:0; }
div.dialog-body {
  padding: 0;
}
```

```
.product-name {
margin: 0;
}
#password, #Ecom_User_ID {
  color: #000 !important;
background-color: #999;
  font-size: 13px;
line-height: 20px;
  margin: 0 0 3px 0;
padding: 11px 10px 12px;
  width: 100%;
box-sizing: border-box;
  border: none;
border-radius: 0;
}
.dialog-footer-content {
  display: none;
}
.button-container button, .btn {
display: block;
  text-align: center;
color: #fff;
  font-size: 13px;
background-color: #48c6e7;
  border: none;
margin: 30px 0 0 0;
  padding: 11px 10px 12px;
box-sizing: border-box;
  width: 100%;
cursor: pointer;
  -webkit-appearance: none;
text-decoration: none;
}
.button-container button:hover {
  background-color:#00B4DF;
border: none;
}
.input-box input {
  box-sizing: border-box;
background-color: #999;
}
p.error {
    color: #cccccc;
    font-size: 13px;
    margin: 0;
    padding: 0 0 18px;
}
#logoutmsg, #logoutmsgsub { color:#fff; }
.error h1 { padding-bottom:20px; }
.help p { margin:0; padding:20px 0 0 0; font-size:11px; }
.help a { color:#cccccc; text-decoration:none; }
.help a:hover { color:#fff; }
.title {
display: none;
}
.image-custom-link, .login-custom-link {
  display: inline;
}
.image-custom-link a {
padding: 0;
```

```
}
.image-custom-link a:hover {
  color: #fff;
background-color: transparent;
  display: inline;
padding: 0;
}
.image-custom-link img {
  height: 0;
width: 0;
}
#loginCustomLink1 {
  float: right;
}
/*-------------------------------------*\
    RESPONSIVE
\*-------------------------------------*/
@media only screen and (max-width:480px) {
  div.page-container {
position: static;
    top: 0;
margin: 0;
  }
div.dialog {
    width: auto;
margin: 0;
  }
}
```

Perform the following steps to add the sample.css file to the `osp-custom-resources.jar` file.

1. Open the `osp-custom-resources.jar` file.
2. Upload your .css file to the `css` folder.
3. Open the `resources` folder.
4. Open the `oidp_enduser_custom_resources_en_US.properties` file to edit the custom branding of the login pages in the English language.
5. Uncomment the line `OIDPENDUSER.LoginCss=reset.css,uistyles.css,uistyles_loginselect.css` by removing the # sign.

   You can add your .css file here. For example, `OIDPENDUSER.LoginCss=sample.css`.
6. Save the `oidp_enduser_custom_resources_en_US.properties` file.

Customizing the Logo of an Enterprise

You can edit the logo displayed on the login page of web authentication event using the parameter `OIDPENDUSER.LoginProductImage` available in the Login page properties.

For example, to edit the logo of the login page of an OAuth 2.0 event in the English language, perform the following:

1. Open the `oidp_enduser_custom_resources_en_US.properties` file and edit the following attribute:

   `OIDPENDUSER.LoginProductImage=company_img.png`.

   You can also edit the .css file. The following code has been added to the sample.css file to display the logo in the Figure 9-1:

```
div.dialog-content {
  height:525px;
  padding:0 15px;
  background:url(/osp/TOP/images/company_img.png);
  background-color:#414749 ;
  background-position:180px 20px;
  background-repeat:no-repeat;
  font-family: Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif;
  text-align: left;
  }
```

2 Ensure that you add the image that you want as a logo to the `images` folder with the name that matches with the attribute value in `OIDPENDUSER.LoginProductImage`.

   By default the images folder contains the image `company_img`.

Customizing the Copyrights

You can edit the copyright text displayed on the login page of web authentication event using the parameter `OIDPENDUSER.50004` available under the **JSP Strings**.

For example, to remove the copyright note that is displayed on the login page of an OAuth 2.0 event in the English language:

1 Open the `oidp_enduser_custom_resources_en_US.properties` file and search the following parameter:

```
#OIDPENDUSER.50004=Copyright [copy] [year] NetIQ[nbsp]Corporation, a
Micro[nbsp]Focus company. All rights reserved
```

2 Uncomment the following parameter as follows:

```
OIDPENDUSER.50004=
```

   This removes the copyright note from the web authentication event - login page.

Customizing the Branding Text

You can edit the branding text displayed on the login page of web authentication event using the parameter `OIDPENDUSER.LoginProductName` available in the **Login page properties** section of the `oidp_enduser_custom_resources_en_US.properties` file.

For example, to edit the branding of the company to **Acme Group**, perform the following:

1 Open the `oidp_enduser_custom_resources_en_US.properties` file and search the following parameter:

```
#OIDPENDUSER.LoginProductName=Company[nbsp]Name[reg]
```

2 Edit the following parameter as follows:

```
OIDPENDUSER.LoginProductName=Acme[nbsp]Group[reg]
```

If you want to remove the branding text **Acme Group, perform the following:**

1 Open the `oidp_enduser_custom_resources_en_US.properties` file and search the following parameter:

```
#OIDPENDUSER.LoginProductName=Company[nbsp]Name[reg]
```

2 Uncomment the following parameter as follows:

```
OIDPENDUSER.LoginProductName=
```

This removes the branding text, Acme Group, from the web authentication event - login page.

Adding Links on the Login Page

You can add links for the login page of the web authentication event.

For example, if you want to add the link **Forgotten Password** that is displayed on the login page in the English language, add the following:

1. Open the `oidp_enduser_custom_resources_en_US.properties` file.
2. Add the following:

```
#OIDPENDUSER.70000=null
OIDPENDUSER.70001=https://intra.sample.net/ForgottenPassword <link where the
users gets redirected to>
OIDPENDUSER.70002=Forgotten Password? <label of the link>
OIDPENDUSER.70004=_top <name of the tenant>
OIDPENDUSER.70005=LOGIN_PAGE <attribute>
```

Customizing Messages and Authentication Method Names for the Web Authentication Events

You can customize the messages and authentication methods name for the Web Authentication events in the Custom Messages policy. Set **Use Custom Messages** to **ON** to enable using the custom messages for the OAuth, SAML 2.0, or Open ID Connect events. You must customize the messages in the "Custom Messages" policy.

10 Configuring the Server Options

Perform the following configurations to configure the Advanced Authentication server settings:

- "Uploading the SSL Certificate" on page 135
- "Customizing the Login Page Background" on page 136
- "Uploading a Keytab File" on page 136

Uploading the SSL Certificate

Advanced Authentication server uses the HTTPS protocol. You must create a certificate file that is in the `.pem` or `.crt`, or `.pfx` format. You must apply the existing SSL certificate on the server.

IMPORTANT: Smartphone and Voice Call authentication providers work only with a valid SSL certificate. Self-signed certificate does not work.

To upload an SSL certificate perform the following steps:

1. Log in to the Advanced Authentication Administration portal directly and not through a load balancer or Access Manager.
2. Click **Server Options**.
3. Click **Browse** in Web server SSL certificate for HTTPS and select a new SSL certificate. The file must contain both the certificate and the private key.

   NOTE: The certificate must not contain any of the encrypted private keys.

   Intermediate certificates must also be placed in the certificate file in the `.pem` or `.crt` or `.pfx` format if they are present.

   IMPORTANT: The certificate file must be in the following order:

   ```
   -----BEGIN PRIVATE KEY-----
   (Your Private Key: your_domain_name.key)
   -----END PRIVATE KEY-----
   -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
   (Your Primary SSL certificate: your_domain_name.crt)
   -----END CERTIFICATE-----
   -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
   (Your Intermediate certificate: intermediate.crt)
   -----END CERTIFICATE-----
   -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
   (Your Root certificate: TrustedRoot.crt)
   -----END CERTIFICATE-----
   ```

   ---

4. Click **Upload**.

IMPORTANT: The certificate is not replicated among the Advanced Authentication servers. Therefore, it is recommended to upload the certificate to each Advanced Authentication server or add it on a load balancer.

Customizing the Login Page Background

You can set a custom login page background. It must be a `JPEG` or `PNG` image and the recommended resolution is `1920x774` px, 72 dpi. You must not use backgrounds whose size exceeds 100KB. To apply a custom login page background, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Browse** in **Login page background**.
2. Select the background file.
3. Click **Upload** to upload and apply the custom background.
4. Click **Revert to original** to revert the settings to original.

Uploading a Keytab File

The **Keytab file** option located in **Server Options** of Advanced Authentication Administration portal helps you to upload a keytab file. The keytab file contains the encrypted files required for the Advanced Authentication server to authenticate to the selected Active Directory using Kerberos.

1. Generate a keytab file for Kerberos authentication to the Advanced Authentication server on a Domain Controller. For information on generating a keytab file, see the website.

   Sample command to create the keytab file:

   ```
   ktpass /princ HTTP/aas1.netiq.loc@NETIQ.LOC /mapuser aas1srv@authasas.local /
   crypto ALL /ptype KRB5_NT_PRINCIPAL /mapop set /pass Q1w2e3r4 /out
   C:\Temp\keytab_aas1srv
   ```

   Information about the sample command is as follows:

   - `HTTP` in upper-case is mandatory in the parameter for keytab file. For more information, see the website.
   - `aas1` is a server name (according to record in DNS), the domain name is `netiq.loc`.
   - `aas1srv` is a service account specially created in Active Directory for the Advanced Authentication server, `Q1w2e3r4` is the password.
   - The keytab file `keytab_aas1srv` is created in the folder `C:\Temp`.

   IMPORTANT: If there are multiple Advanced Authentication servers in the cluster, generate a keytab file for each Advanced Authentication server. Different users must be used for the keytab file generation for each server.

2. Click **Upload** to select and upload the keytab file.

11 Adding a License

To add a license for Advanced Authentication, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Licenses**.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Click **Browse** and select the valid license.
4. Click **Upload** to upload the license.

A user license is consumed when a user enrolls at least one authenticator through an automatic enrollment, enrollment by a Helpdesk administrator, or self-enrollment. This is an exception for the LDAP password, as a license is not consumed for it. An automatic enrollment is done only when a user performs a first authentication.

After you add the license, following details of the license are displayed:

- License ID
- Expiry date
- Restrictions: License type and applicable restrictions.
- Usage: List of applicable authentication methods with the total and usage count of each method.

Your license might be limited to some specific authentication methods. Other methods will be unavailable in the **Methods** section.

IMPORTANT: If the multi-tenancy mode is enabled, you must add licenses for each tenant.

TIP: To free up a user's license, perform the following steps:

1. Exclude the user from a group that is assigned to chains.
2. Click **Repositories** and edit a repository.
3. Click **Full sync** to perform a full synchronization of the repository.

   The existing user's authenticators are removed.

---

12 Exporting and Importing the Database

IMPORTANT: The Advanced Authentication upgrade with the database is not supported post Advanced Authentication 5.6. Therefore, it is recommended to export the database and upgrade an appliance from version 5 to the 6.0 version.

Advanced Authentication facilitates you to export the entire database to `.cpt` format. In this way, you can create backup of the database or migrate the database to Advanced Authentication 6.0 version. The exported database includes configuration of the following sections:

- Dashboard
- Repositories
- Methods
- Chains
- Events
- Endpoints
- Policies
- Logs
- Licenses
- Tenant database
- Server Options
  - Login page background
  - Web server SSL certificate for HTTPS
- Enrollment
  - Enrolled Authenticators
  - Shared Authenticators
  - Emergency Passwords

NOTE: The exported database does not include configuration of the following sections:

- Web Authentication
- Debug logs
- Cluster configuration in Global Master server
- Updates.

Importing the Database

To import the database, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Export**.
2. Click **For import Click Here** to upload the database.

3 In **Step 1. Upload backup** section, specify the following details:

3a **From**: The database download URL (FTP or HTTP server).

Ensure the database file is in the `.cpt` format.

3b **Decrypt Password**: The password to decrypt the database file.

4 Click **Upload**.

The upload logs are displayed. The uploaded file is displayed in the **Step 2. Import backup** section.

5 Click **Import** next to the uploaded file.

The import logs are displayed.

IMPORTANT: For recovering from a disaster in production environments with multiple sites and services, see “”.

NOTE: You may get the following errors while you are importing the database:

- If the provided download path or decrypt password is incorrect, a message `Error Download or decrypt. Wrong back up password or URL` is displayed.
- When you export the configurations from Advanced Authentication 5.6 Patch Update 5 to 6.0 appliance, an error message `oob: ERROR (spawn error)` is displayed in the `Importlogs.txt`. You can ignore this error and the Authentication Agent service will start immediately after the server reboot.

---

6 After you export and import the database, you must restart the server.

NOTE: The Tenant administrators cannot export and import the database.

---

13 Adding a Report

Report provides you pictorial representation of collected data. You can examine data in different combinations, display report in easy-to-understand graphs, track data at different time intervals and export the report in JSON and CSV formats to share the result with others. With reports, you can track all logins (failed or successful), users' enrollment status, authentication methods used for specific event, license information, number of active users and so on.

You can add a report with specific report type as described in Table 3-1.

Table 13-1 *Report Types*

Report Type	Description	Available Attributes
Pie chart	This report displays the information collected on a specific parameter and represents information in the Pie chart format. You can sort the parameter in ascending and descending order.	◆ **Name**: Title of the report. ◆ **Relative Time Interval**: Set this option to **ON** to select a specific time interval from the **Relative Interval**. Set this option to **OFF** to select preferred From and To dates from the **Date range**. ◆ **Event Type**: Types of events to display in the report. Options available are **All logon events**, **Failed logon events** and **Successful logon events**. ◆ **Size**: Number of records to filter in the report. ◆ **Order**: Sorting order of selected parameter in the **Field**. Options available are **Ascending** and **Descending**. ◆ **Field**: The parameter on which the data is collected to display in the report. Options available are **Event Name**, **Chain Name**, **Method Name**, **Endpoint Name** and so on. ◆ **Users**: To filter records of specific user from directory. ◆ **Events**: To filter records of specific event. ◆ **Chains**: To filter records of specific chain.

Report Type	Description	Available Attributes
Stacked chart	This report displays a stacked bar chart that classifies and compares different categories of Field 1 and 2 parameters to track the maximum and minimum number of logons. X-axis represents categories of the Field 2 parameter. Y-axis represents logon count. Segments in each vertical bar represents categories of Field 1 parameter. Different colors are used to depict different categories and label for each category is displayed in upper-right corner of the report.	◆ **Name**: Title of the report. ◆ **Relative Time Interval**: Set this option to **ON** to select a specific time interval from the **Relative Interval**. Set this option to **OFF** to select preferred From and To dates from the **Date range**. ◆ **Event Type**: Types of events to display in the report. Options available are **All logon events**, **Failed logon events** and **Successful logon events**. ◆ **Field 1**: The parameter to represent on X-axis of the report. Options available are **Event Name**, **Chain Name**, **Method Name**, **Endpoint Name** and so on. ◆ **Size 1**: Number of records to display on the X-axis. ◆ **Order 1**: To sort the parameter selected in the **Field 1**. Options available are **Ascending** and **Descending**. ◆ **Field 2**: The parameter to represent on Y-axis of the report. Options available are **Event Name**, **Chain Name**, **Method Name**, **Endpoint Name** and so on. ◆ **Size 2**: Number of records to display on the Y-axis. ◆ **Order 2**: To sort the parameter selected in the **Field 2**. Options available are **Ascending** and **Descending**. ◆ **Users**: To filter records of specific user from directory. ◆ **Events**: To filter records of specific event. ◆ **Chains**: To filter records of specific chain.
Activity stream	This report displays information about user, tenant, chain, method used for authentication, and the result.	◆ **Name**: Title of the report. ◆ **Relative Time Interval**: Set this option to **ON**, select a specific time interval from the **Relative Interval**. Set this option to **OFF**, select preferred From and To dates from the **Date range**. ◆ **Event Type**: Types of events to display in the report. Options available are **All logon events**, **Failed logon events** and **Successful logon events**. ◆ **Users**: To filter records of specific user from directory. ◆ **Events**: To filter records of specific event. ◆ **Chains**: To filter records of specific chain.

Report Type	Description	Available Attributes
Enroll activity stream	This report displays information about enrolled users: last log on time, tenant, user, method used for authentication, and event type.	◆ **Name**: Title of the report. ◆ **Relative Time Interval**: Set this option to **ON** to select a specific time interval from the **Relative Interval**. Set this option to **OFF** to select preferred From and To dates from the **Date range**. ◆ **Users**: To filter records of specific user from directory.
Users	This report displays information about the enrolled users: tenant name, user name, enrollment status and last log on time.	◆ **Name**: Title of the report. ◆ **Relative Time Interval**: Set this option to **ON** to select a specific time interval from the **Relative Interval**. Set this option to **OFF** to select preferred From and To dates from the **Date range**.
Authenticators	This report displays information about the enrolled authenticators: tenant name, user name, event category, method, comment and owner of the account.	◆ **Name**: Title of the report. ◆ **Relative Time Interval**: Set this option to **ON** to select a specific time interval from the **Relative Interval**. Set this option to **OFF** to select preferred From and To dates from the **Date range**.
Licenses	This report displays information about the license id, license validity dates (such as From and To dates), license expiry status and license warnings (regarding license expiry, exceed in user count)	◆ **Name**: Title of the report. ◆ **Relative Time Interval**: Set this option to **ON** to select a specific time interval from the **Relative Interval**. Set this option to **OFF** to select preferred From and To dates from the **Date range**.
Event count line chart	This report tracks and displays logon count of all events in the appliance. X-axis represents time and Y-axis represents logon count. Each data point on the chart represents numbers of user logged on at a specific time. All the data points are plotted and connected with a line to track the maximum and minimum number of logons.	◆ **Name**: Title of the report. ◆ **Relative Time Interval**: Set this option to **ON** to select a specific time interval from the **Relative Interval**. Set this option to **OFF** to select preferred From and To dates from the **Date range**. ◆ **Event Type**: Types of events to display in the report. Options available are **All logon events**, **Failed logon events** and **Successful logon events**. ◆ **Interval**: Regular interval to track the data point on the chart. ◆ **Users**: To filter records of specific user from directory. ◆ **Events**: To filter records of specific event. ◆ **Chains**: To filter records of specific chain.

Report Type	Description	Available Attributes
Event count line chart group by field	This report tracks and displays logon count of specific parameter. X-axis represents time and Y-axis represents logon count. Data points of different colors represent specific category of the selected parameter. The label for each category is displayed in upper-right corner of the widget. All the data points are plotted and connected with a line to track the maximum and minimum number of logons.	◆ **Name**: Title of the report. ◆ **Relative Time Interval**: Set this option to **ON** to select a specific time interval from the **Relative Interval**. Set this option to **OFF** to select preferred From and To dates from the **Date range**. ◆ **Event Type**: Types of events to display in the report. Options available are **All logon events**, **Failed logon events** and **Successful logon events**. ◆ **Interval**: Regular interval to track the data point on the chart. ◆ **Size**: Number of records to filter in the report. ◆ **Order**: Sorting order of the parameter selected in the **Field**. Options available are **Ascending** and **Descending**. ◆ **Field**: The parameter on which the data is collected to display in the report. Options available are **Event Name**, **Chain Name**, **Method Name**, **Endpoint Name** and so on. ◆ **Users**: To filter records of specific user from directory. ◆ **Events**: To filter records of specific event. ◆ **Chains**: To filter records of specific chain.

Report Type	Description	Available Attributes
Distinct events count line chart	This report tracks and displays distinct count of all categories in the selected parameter (**Distinct values by field**). X-axis represents time and Y-axis represents distinct logon count. Each data point on the chart represents unique logon count at a specific time. All the data points are plotted and connected with a line to track the maximum and minimum number of distinct logons.	◆ **Name**: Title of the report. ◆ **Relative Time Interval**: Set this option to **ON**, select a specific time interval from the **Relative Interval**. Set this option to **OFF**, select preferred From and To dates from the **Date range**. ◆ **Event Type**: Events to display in the report. Options available are **All logon events**, **Failed logon events** and **Successful logon events**. ◆ **Interval**: Regular interval to track the data point on the chart. ◆ **Distinct values by field**: The parameter on which the data is collected to display in the report. Options available are **Event Name**, **Chain Name**, **Method Name**, **Endpoint Name** and so on. ◆ **Size**: Number of records to filter in the report. ◆ **Order**: Sorting order of the parameter selected in the **Field**. Options available are **Ascending** and **Descending**. ◆ **Users**: To filter records of specific user from directory. ◆ **Events**: To filter records of specific event. ◆ **Chains**: To filter records of specific chain.

Report Type	Description	Available Attributes
Distinct events count line chart group by field	This report displays and classifies distinct logon count of each event. X-axis represents time and Y-axis represents distinct logon count. Each data point on the chart represents unique logon count of particular event at a specific time. All the data points are plotted and connected with a line to track the maximum and minimum number of distinct logons to particular event.	◆ **Name**: Title of the report. ◆ **Relative Time Interval**: Set this option to **ON**, select a specific time interval from the **Relative Interval**. Set this option to **OFF**, select preferred From and To dates from the **Date range**. ◆ **Event Type**: Events to display in the report. Options available are **All logon events**, **Failed logon events** and **Successful logon events**. ◆ **Interval**: Regular interval to track the data point on the chart. ◆ **Size**: Number of records to filter in the report. ◆ **Order**: Sorting order of the parameter selected in the **Field**. Options available are **Ascending** and **Descending**. ◆ **Field**: The parameter on which the data is collected to display in the report. Options available are **Event Name**, **Chain Name**, **Method Name**, **Endpoint Name** and so on. ◆ **Distinct values by field**: The parameter on which the data is collected to display in the report. Options available are **Event Name**, **Chain Name**, **Method Name**, **Endpoint Name** and so on. ◆ **Users**: To filter records of specific user from directory. ◆ **Events**: To filter records of specific event. ◆ **Chains**: To filter records of specific chain.

Following are the generic steps to add a custom report:

1. Click **Reports** in the Administration portal.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Specify the report title in the **Name**.
4. Select the preferred **Report type**. Options available are:
   - Pie chart
   - Stacked chart
   - Activity stream
   - Enroll activity stream
   - Users
   - Authenticators
   - Licenses
   - Servers
   - Events count line chart
   - Events count line chart grouped by field

- Distinct events count line chart
- Distinct events count line chart grouped by field

5. When the **Relative time interval** is set to **ON**, the **Relative Interval** is displayed to select a specific time interval. When set to **OFF**, the date range is displayed to select preferred From and To dates.
6. Select the preferred **Event type**. Options available are **All logon events**, **Failed logon events**, and **Successful logon events**.
7. Select number of records from the **Size** to display in the report.
8. Select sorting order from the **Order**. Options available are **Ascending** or **Descending**.
9. Select the preferred parameter from the **Field**. Based on the selected parameter, the data is collected to display on the report. Options available are **Event Name**, **Chain Name**, **Method Name**, **Endpoint Name** and so on.
10. Specify and select the preferred domain joined user from the **Users** to filter records in the report.
11. Specify and select the preferred event from the **Events** to filter records in the report.
12. Specify and select the preferred chain from the **Chains** to filter records in the report.
13. Click **Save**.
14. Click **Reload** to generate and display the report based on the selected values.

14 Enrolling the Authentication Methods

Advanced Authentication server supports the following ways to enroll the authentication methods:

- **Automatic enrollment**: This type of enrollment is used for the **SMS**, **Email**, **RADIUS**, **LDAP Password**, and **Swisscom Mobile ID** methods.

  The methods are enrolled automatically if the chains containing them are assigned to any event.
- **Enrollment by Administrator**: This type of enrollment is used for the **OATH Tokens**.

  An administrator can import tokens from the PSKC or CSV files in the **Administration portal** > **Methods** > **OATH OTP** > **OATH Tokens** tab. You can assign tokens to the specific users.
- **Enrollment by Helpdesk administrator**: This type of enrollment is used by the Helpdesk administrator.

  A Helpdesk administrator can access the Helpdesk portal with the address: `https://<NetIQ Server>/helpdesk`. In the Helpdesk portal, the Helpdesk administrator can enroll the authentication methods for users. A Helpdesk administrator must be a member of the **Enroll Admins** group (**Repositories > Local > Edit > Global Roles**) to manage users' authenticators.
- **Enrollment by User**: This method is applicable for the users. A user can access the Self-Service portal with the address: `https://<NetIQ Server>/account`, where the users can enroll any of the authentication methods.

15 Sample Configurations

This section describes how to configure Advanced Authentication with the following example scenarios:

- "Implementing Multi-Factor Authentication to VPN" on page 151
- "Securing Windows Workstation with Multi-Factor Authentication" on page 156

Implementing Multi-Factor Authentication to VPN

Let us assume Reltic Data, Inc. wants to implement multi-factor authentication for its VPN (Virtual Private Network) connection to secure the Corporate network that is accessed from their employees who are in a remote location.

This section explains the prerequisites, flow of actions, and step-by-step configuration details to achieve this.

This example refers to the following user profiles:

- Thomas: An administrator of Reltic Data, Inc.
- Mark Jones: An employee of Reltic Data, Inc.

Thomas, an administrator wants to enforce Multi-factor authentication with the LDAP Password and Smartphone methods for OpenVPN to secure the corporate network. After multi-factor authentication is implemented, employees need to authenticate to both methods successfully to access the network through VPN.

Thomas must perform the following tasks to implement multi-factor authentication for OpenVPN:

1. Add a Repository
2. Configure Methods
3. Create a Chain
4. Configure Public External URLs Policy
5. Assign Chain to RADIUS Server Event
6. Configure the OpenVPN Server

To understand the sequential flow of configuration in the Advanced Authentication Administration portal, see Configuration Flow in Advanced Authentication for RADIUS Server Event.

For information about how an end user enrolls the configured methods and authenticates to VPN client using Advanced Authentication, see End User Tasks.

Prerequisites

Ensure that you meet the following prerequisites:

- An LDAP repository for Reltic Data, Inc is configured and the repository contains the information of all users.

This example uses **Active Directory Domain Services** as an **LDAP repository**.

- A group named **Employees** is created in Active Directory Domain Services.
- The Advanced Authentication server is installed. For more information, see Installing Advanced Authentication.
- A VPN client is installed on all employees' system.

  This example uses **OpenVPN** as the VPN client.

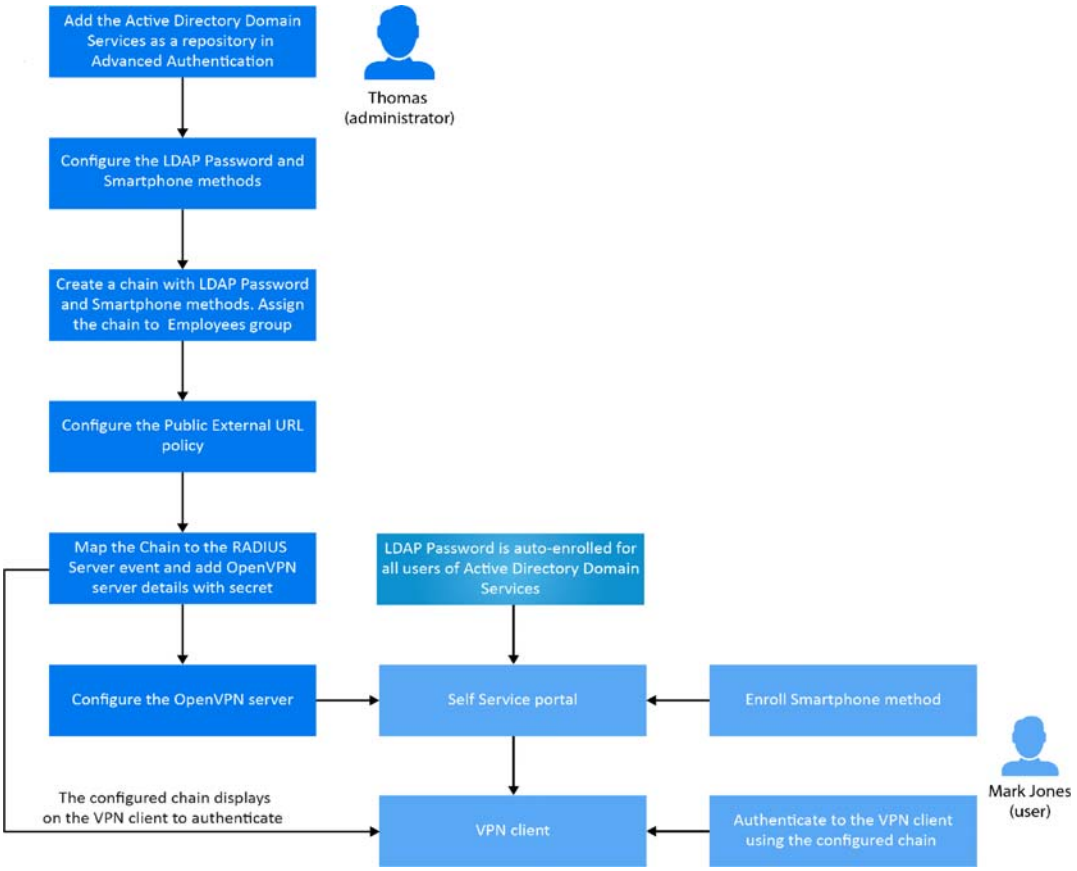
Considerations Before Configuration

Follow these guidelines to begin implementing multi-factor authentication for any event:

1. Identify the authentication methods that you want to configure.
2. Determine the order of methods in the chain. The methods are displayed to the end user in the order that you have configured.
3. Determine the policy that must be configured for the identified method.
4. Identify the user group for which you want to enforce this authentication chain.

Configuration Flow in Advanced Authentication for RADIUS Server Event

The following diagram illustrates the sequential flow of actions required for securing the Open VPN client with multi-factor authentication:



Add a Repository

In Advanced Authentication, add Active Directory of Reltic Data, Inc. as a repository from where the user details are fetched for validation.

Perform the following steps to add Active Directory of Reltic Data, Inc. to Advanced Authentication:

1. Click **Repositories** on the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.
2. Click **Add LDAP repo**.
3. Select **AD** (Active Directory Domain Services) from the **LDAP type list**.
4. Specify a container for the users in **Base DN**. When you select the **Subtree** option, Advanced Authentication performs a search for the users in each child node. You can change the search scope by selecting the **Search one level only** option.
5. Specify a user account in **User** and specify the password of the user in **Password**.

   Ensure that the user's password has no expiry.
6. You can specify a container for the groups in **Group DN (optional)**. When you select the **Subtree** option, Advanced Authentication performs a search for the groups in each child node. You can change the search scope by selecting the **Search one level only** option.
7. Select **DNS discovery** to find LDAP servers automatically. Specify **DNS zone** and **Site name** (optional) and click **Perform DNS Discovery**.

   When the DNS discovery is done, the DNS servers list is updated every three hours.
8. Click **Save**.

   NOTE: If an LDAP server is unavailable for 2.5 seconds, Advanced Authentication excludes it from the LDAP requests for a period of 3 minutes.

   ---
9. Continue with Configure Methods.

Configure Methods

The LDAP Password and Smartphone methods are configured with pre-defined values. These methods work as expected with the pre-defined values.

For more information, see LDAP Password and Smartphone.

Create a Chain

Perform the following steps to create a chain with LDAP Password and Smartphone methods:

1. Click **Chains > Add** in the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.
2. Specify the following details:

Field	Description
Name	A name for the chain. **NOTE:** Ensure to remember the name of the chain for further use.
Short name	A name that is provided to end user for selecting a chain. For example, you configure a chain named SMS containing LDAP Password and SMS methods. A user can specify <username> sms and the user is required to use SMS as the chain. This is helpful in scenarios when the primary chain is not available.
Is enabled	Set to ON to enable the chain.
Methods	Select the LDAP Password and Smartphone methods to add to the chain.
Roles and Groups	Specify Employees. This enforces all users of this group to use this authentication chain for accessing the corporate network through VPN.

3 Click **Save**.

4 Continue with Configure Public External URLs Policy.

Configure Public External URLs Policy

The external URL manages the following activities for the Smartphone method:

- A push notification that is sent to the NetIQ Advanced Authentication app.
- User responses from the NetIQ Advanced Authentication app.

Perform the following steps to configure the external URL:

1 Click **Policies > Public External URLs** on the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.

2 Click **Edit** and specify the URL in **Public URL**.

Ensure that the Public URL is accessible from users' smartphone.

3 Click **OK**.

4 Continue with Assign Chain to RADIUS Server Event.

Assign Chain to RADIUS Server Event

Perform the following steps to assign the chain to RADIUS Server event and configure details of the Open VPN server with a secret:

1 Click **Events**.

2 Click **Edit** next to the **RADIUS Server** event.

3 Ensure that **Is enabled** is set to **ON**.

4 Select the chains that you have created in Create a Chain.

5 Click **Add** to add and assign a RADIUS Client to the event:

5a Specify the IP address of the OpenVPN server in **IP Address**.

5b Specify the OpenVPN server name in **Name**.

5c Specify the OpenVPN server secret and confirm the secret.

NOTE: Ensure to make a note of this secret for future reference.

5d Ensure that the **RADIUS Client** is set to **ON**.

6 Click **Save**.

7 Continue with Configure the OpenVPN Server.

Configure the OpenVPN Server

Perform the following steps to configure the OpenVPN server and enable the server to connect with Advanced Authentication server:

1 Open the OpenVPN Access server site.

2 Click **Authentication > RADIUS**.

3 Enable the **RADIUS authentication**.

4 Select **PAP**.

5 Add an IP address of the Advanced Authentication server and specify the secret that is set while configuring the RADIUS Server event in the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.

You must specify the `<repository name>\<username>` or only *<username>* if you have set the following configurations:

- You have selected a chain from the Used section in the RADIUS Server settings for connecting to OpenVPN.
- You have set the default repository name in **Policies > Login** options of the Advanced Authentication appliance.

End User Tasks

Mark, as an employee, must perform the following actions to access the corporate network of Reltic Data network through OpenVPN:

- "Enroll the Smartphone Method" on page 155
- "Authenticate to OpenVPN Using Advanced Authentication" on page 156

NOTE: The LDAP Password method enrolls automatically and users cannot remove it.

For more information, see LDAP Password.

Enroll the Smartphone Method

Mark must ensure to install the NetIQ Auth application on his smartphone to enroll the Smartphone method.

For more information about downloading and installing the NetIQ Auth application, see Installing NetIQ Advanced Authentication App.

During the enrollment, Mark must scan a QR code that creates an authenticator on his mobile app. When Mark initiates the authentication, a push notification is sent to the app. Accept the request and get authenticated.

To enroll the Smartphone method with a QR code, perform the following steps:

1. Click the Smartphone icon under the **Add Authenticator** section of the Self-Service portal.
2. (Optional) Specify a comment related to the Smartphone authenticator.
3. (Optional) Select the required category from **Category**.
4. Click **Save**.

   A QR code is displayed.
5. Scan the QR code with the NetIQ Auth app. To do this, perform the following steps:
   - **5a** Open the NetIQ Auth app.
   - **5b** Specify a PIN if applicable.
   - **5c** Click the **+** (plus) icon in the **Enrolled Authenticators** screen.
   - **5d** The camera of your smartphone is launched.
   - **5e** Scan the QR code with the camera.

     A message `Authenticator "Smartphone" added` is displayed.
6. Specify the user name and an optional comment in the app.
7. Tap **Save**.

   The smartphone authenticator is created.

If Mark does not enroll the Smartphone method within few minutes, an error message `Enroll failed: Enroll timeout` is displayed. He can refresh the browser and try enrolling again.

TIP: If you users are unable to scan the QR code with the NetIQ Auth app, they can do the following:

- Zoom the page to 125-150% and scan the zoomed QR code.
- Ensure that nothing overlaps the QR code (mouse cursor, text).

For more information, see Smartphone.

Authenticate to OpenVPN Using Advanced Authentication

1. Launch the OpenVPN client.

   The Login dialog is displayed.
2. Specify **Username** and **LDAP Password**.
3. Open the NetIQ Auth app in the mobile phone.

   Specify PIN or touch the enrolled finger that you registered for the app.
4. Tap **Accept** in the **Authentication Requests** screen to accept the authentication request.

   A message `Accepted` is displayed and Mark authenticates to OpenVPN successfully.

Securing Windows Workstation with Multi-Factor Authentication

Let us assume Reltic Data, Inc. wants to implement multi-factor authentication for all Windows workstations to secure the data and provide authorized access to their employees.

This section explains the prerequisites, flow of actions, and step-by-step configuration details to achieve this.

This example refers to the following user profiles:

- Clarie Lee: An administrator of Reltic Data, Inc.
- Sussane Ross: An employee of Reltic Data, Inc.

Clarie, an administrator wants to enforce multi-factor authentication with the U2F and SMS OTP methods for the Windows login. After multi-factor authentication is implemented, employees must authenticate to both methods successfully to access the Windows workstation.

Clarie must perform the following tasks to implement multi-factor authentication for the Windows logon:

1. Add a Repository
2. Configure Methods
3. Create a Chain
4. Configure SMS Sender Policy
5. Assign Chain to Windows Logon Event

To understand the sequential flow of configuration in the Advanced Authentication Administration portal, see Configuration Flow in Advanced Authentication for Windows Logon Event.

For information about how an end user enrolls the configured methods and authenticates to the Windows workstation using Advanced Authentication, see End User Tasks.

Prerequisites

Ensure that you meet the following prerequisites:

- An LDAP repository for Reltic Data, Inc is configured and the repository contains the information of all users.

  This example uses **Active Directory Domain Services** as an **LDAP repository**.
- A group named **Windows OS** is created in Active Directory Domain Services.
- The Advanced Authentication server is installed. For more information, see Installing Advanced Authentication.
- The Advanced Authentication Windows Client is installed on Windows workstation. For more information, see Installing Windows Client.
- A DNS is configured to allow the Windows Client to discover and connect with the Advanced Authentication server. For more information, see Setting a DNS for Advanced Authentication Server Discovery
- The Advanced Authentication Device Service is installed on the Windows workstation. For more information, see Installing Device Service on Windows.
- An account for Reltic Data, Inc is registered with a SMS service provider that can deliver SMS OTP to users during authentication.

  This example uses **Twilio** as the SMS service provider.

Points to Consider Before Configuration

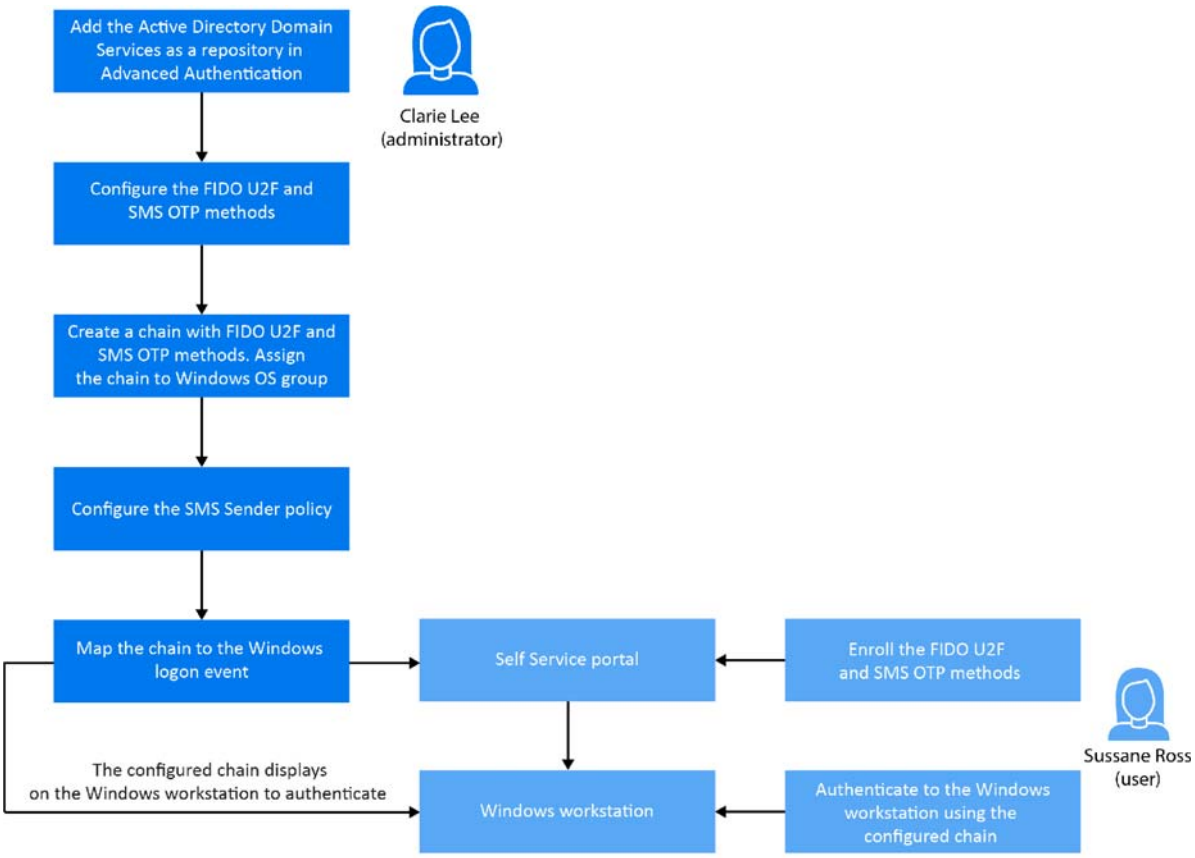
Consider the following guidelines before you begin implementing multi-factor authentication for the **Windows logon**:

1. Identify the authentication methods that you want to configure.

2. Determine the order of methods in the chain. The methods are displayed to the end user in the order that you have configured.
3. Determine the policy that must be configured for the identified methods.
4. Identify the user group for which you want to enforce this authentication chain.

Configuration Flow in Advanced Authentication for Windows Logon Event

The following diagram illustrates the sequential flow of actions required for securing the Windows workstation with multi-factor authentication:



Add a Repository

In Advanced Authentication, add Active Directory of Reltic Data, Inc. as a repository from where the user details are fetched for validation.

Perform the following steps to add Active Directory of Reltic Data , Inc. to Advanced Authentication:

1 Click **Repositories** on the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.

2 Click **Add LDAP repo**.

3 Select **AD** (Active Directory Domain Services) from the **LDAP type** list.

4 Specify a container for the users in **Base DN**. When you select the **Subtree** option, Advanced Authentication performs a search for the users in all the child nodes. You can change the search scope by selecting the **Search one level only** option.

5 Specify a user account in User and specify the password of the user in **Password**.

   Ensure that the user's password has no expiry.

6 You can specify a container for the groups in **Group DN (optional)**. When you select the **Subtree** option, Advanced Authentication performs a search for the groups in all the child nodes. You can change the search scope by selecting the **Search one level only** option.

7 Select **DNS discovery** to find LDAP servers automatically. Specify the **DNS zone** and **Site name** (optional) and click **Perform DNS Discovery**.

   When the DNS discovery is done, the DNS servers list is updated every three hours.

8 Click **Save**.

NOTE: If an LDAP server is unavailable for 2.5 seconds, Advanced Authentication excludes it from the LDAP requests for a duration of 3 minutes.

---

9 Continue with Configure Methods.

Configure Methods

Perform the following steps to configure the Password and SMS OTP methods:

1 Click **Methods** on the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.

2 Click the **Edit** icon corresponding to the U2F method.

3 Perform the following steps to configure the U2F method:

   3a Set **Require attestation certificate** to **ON** to enable validation of the attestation certificate.

   3b Select the attestation certificate:

      3b1 To use a default certificate, click **Add Default**.

      3b2 To use a custom certificate instead of predefined device manufacturer certificate, perform the following steps:

         3b2a Click next to the default attestation certificate to remove the certificate.

         3b2b Click **Add** to add a custom certificate.

         3b2c Click **Browse** and select the custom certificate and click **Upload**.

         The certificate must be in the PEM format.

   3c Click **Save**.

4 Configure the SMS OTP method.

   4a Click the Edit icon corresponding to SMS OTP method.

   4b Specify the following details to configure SMS OTP method:

Parameter	Description
OTP Period	The lifetime of an OTP in seconds. The default value is 120 seconds.
OTP format	The number of digits in the OTP. The default value is 6.
Body	The text in the SMS that is sent to the user. The following structure describes the text in the OTP: ◆ {user}: Name of the user. {endpoint}: Device the user is authenticating to. {event}: Name of the event where the user is trying to authenticate to. ◆ {otp}: One-Time Password.
Allow overriding phone number	Set this option to **OFF** to prevent users to specify a different phone number during the enrollment. The option is set to ON by default.
Allow user enrollment without a phone	Set this option to **OFF** to ensure that a user does not enroll the SMS OTP authenticator without a phone. The user is prompted with an error message that you can specify in Error message. Set this option to **ON** to allow the user to enroll the SMS OTP authenticator without a phone.

4c Click **Save**.

5 Continue with Create a Chain.

Create a Chain

Perform the following steps to create a chain with the U2F and SMS OTP methods:

1 Click **Chains > Add** in the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.

2 Specify the following details:

Field	Description
Name	A name for the chain. **NOTE:** Ensure to remember the name of the chain for further use.
Short name	This is not applicable for the Windows Client event. This is applicable only for the RADIUS Server event.
Is enabled	Set to **ON** to enable the chain.
Methods	Select the U2F and SMS OTP methods to add to the chain.
Roles and Groups	Specify Windows OS users. This enforces all users of this group to use this authentication chain for logging in to the Windows workstation.

3 Click **Save**.

4 Continue with Configure SMS Sender Policy.

Configure SMS Sender Policy

In Advanced Authentication, add Twilio details of Reltic Data, Inc. as a service provider that sends SMS OTP to the end users during authentication.

Perform the following steps to configure the details of Twilio in Advanced Authentication:

1. Click **Policies > SMS Sender** in the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.
2. Select **Twilio** in Sender service.
3. Specify the masked value that you want to display for the SMS in **Recipient Mask**.

   The SMS OTP of the users is masked when users authenticate with the SMS OTP method.

   NOTE: The **Recipient Mask** value is predefined and if you do not change the value, the default value is considered for masking of the SMS OTP.

   ---

4. Specify the following details:
   - **Account sid** and **Authentication token**: In Twilio, the Account SID acts as a username and the Authentication Token acts as a password.
   - **Sender phone**: Sender's phone number.
5. You can test the configurations for the SMS sender policy in the **Test** section.
   1. Specify the phone number in **Phone** to which you want to send the SMS OTP.
   2. Specify a message to be sent to the phone in **Message**.
   3. Click **Send test message!**.
6. Click **Save**.
7. Continue with Assign Chain to Windows Logon Event.

Assign Chain to Windows Logon Event

Perform the following steps to assign the chain to Windows logon event:

1. Click **Events**.
2. Click **Edit** next to the **Windows Logon** event.
3. Ensure that **Is enabled** is set to **ON**.
4. Select the chains that you have created in Create a Chain.
5. Click **Save**.

End User Tasks

Sussane must perform the following tasks to authenticate to the Windows workstation with the configured methods:

- "Enroll the FIDO U2F Method" on page 162
- "Enroll the SMS OTP Methods" on page 162
- "Authenticate to the Windows Workstation Using Advanced Authentication" on page 162

Enroll the FIDO U2F Method

1 Log in to the Advanced Authentication Self-Service portal.

2 Click the U2F icon in **Add Authenticator**.

A message `Press button "Save" to begin enrolling.` is displayed.

3 (Optional) Specify a comment related to U2F in **Comment**.

4 (Optional) Select the preferred category from **Category**.

5 Click **Save**.

A message `Please touch the flashing U2F device now` is displayed. You may be prompted to allow the site permissions to access your security keys.

6 Touch the FIDO U2F button when there is a flash on the device.

A message `Authenticator "U2F" enrolled` is displayed. If there is no flash for more than 10 seconds, reconnect your token and repeat the steps.

Enroll the SMS OTP Methods

NOTE: The SMS OTP method enrolls automatically if a phone number is specified in the user profile in Active Directory.

---

1 Click the SMS OTP icon in **Add Authenticator**.

2 (Optional) Specify a comment related to SMS OTP authenticator in **Comment**.

3 (Optional) Select the preferred category from **Category**.

4 Specify the mobile number in **Phone number**.

5 Click **Save**.

A message `Authenticator "SMS OTP" has been added` is displayed.

Authenticate to the Windows Workstation Using Advanced Authentication

1 Switch ON the Windows workstation.

The Sign in screen is displayed.

2 Specify **Username**.

Ensure the FIDO U2F device is plugged to the workstation.

3 Touch the FIDO U2F button when there is a flash on the device.

4 Specify the OTP that is sent to the phone.

Sussane gets authenticated to the Windows workstation successfully.

Configuring Integrations

Advanced Authentication facilitates clients to integrate with the third-party solutions using the following interface.

- OAuth 2.0
- RADIUS Server
- SAML 2.0
- REST API

The information about configuring Advanced Authentication with some of the third party solutions is as follows:

- Configuring Integration with Barracuda
- Configuring Integration with Citrix NetScaler
- Configuring Integration With Dell SonicWall SRA EX-Virtual Appliance
- Configuring Integration with FortiGate
- Configuring Integration with OpenVPN
- Configuring Integration with Salesforce
- Configuring Integration with ADFS

16 OAuth 2.0

In OAuth 2.0 authorization, the third-party client requests access to the resources that are controlled by the resource owner. Instead of using the resource owner's credentials to access the protected resources, the third-party client obtains an access token. The third-party clients can be web applications, mobile phones, handheld devices, and desktop applications.

This section contains the following topics:

- “Building Blocks of OAuth 2.0” on page 165
- “Sample OAuth 2.0 Application Integrated with Advanced Authentication” on page 168
- “OAuth 2.0 Attributes” on page 173
- “Non Standard Endpoints” on page 174

Building Blocks of OAuth 2.0

The following are the building blocks of OAuth 2.0.

- OAuth 2.0 Roles
- OAuth 2.0 Grants

OAuth 2.0 Roles

OAuth 2.0 consists of the following four roles:

- **Resource Owner:** Entity that grants access to a protected resource. It can be a system or a person (end-user) owning the resources.
- **Resource Server:** Server that hosts the protected resources. It accepts and responds to the protected resource requests using the access tokens.
- **Client:** Application that requests and get authorization on behalf of the resource owner to access a protected resource.
- **Authorization Server:** Server that issues access tokens to the client after the successful authentication of the resource owner and obtaining authorization.

OAuth 2.0 Grants

By default, Advanced Authentication supports the following OAuth 2.0 grant types. However, if you require to use the **Resource owner password credential** grant, you have to enable it using Advanced Authentication settings. For more information on OAuth 2.0 grant types, see the link (https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc6749).

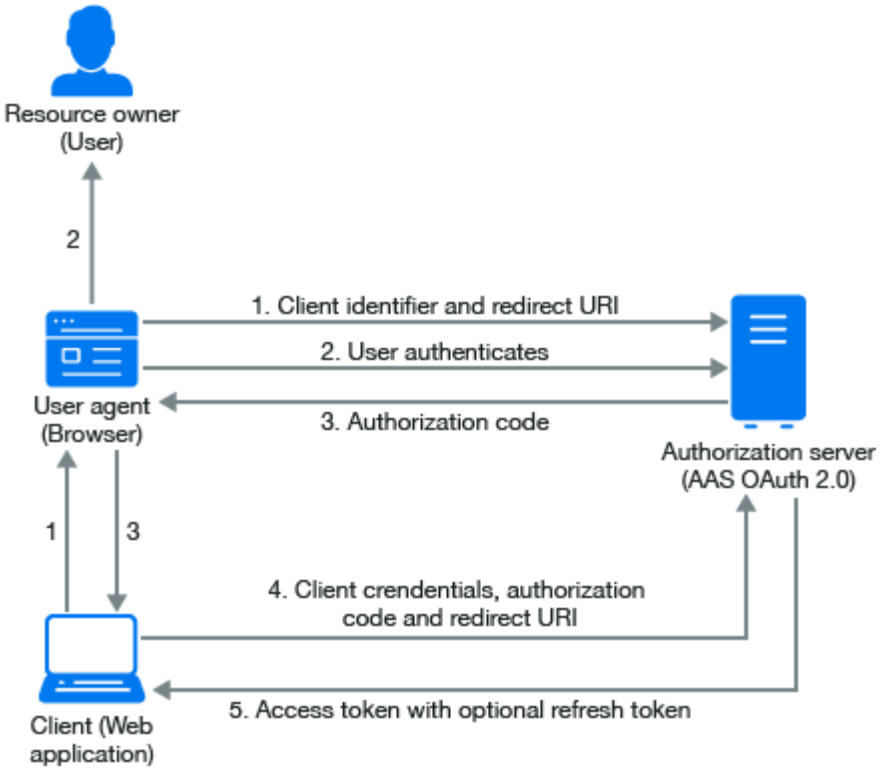
- “Authorization Code” on page 166
- “Implicit Grant” on page 167

Authorization Code

In authorization code, an authorization server acts as an intermediary between the client and the resource owner. Instead of requesting authorization directly from the resource owner, the client directs the resource owner to an authorization server, which in turn directs the resource owner back to the client with the authorization code.

The authorization grant type depends on the method used by the application to request authorization, and the grant types supported by the API.

The following diagram describes the workflow of authorization code grant.



The workflow for authorization code includes the following steps:

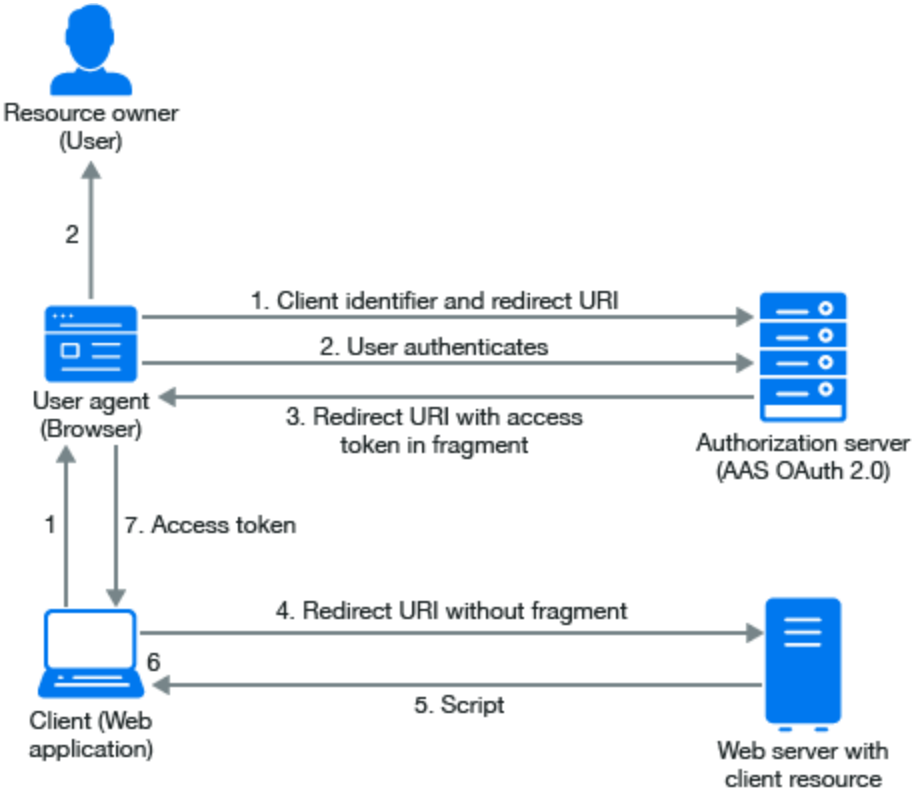
1. The OAuth client initiates the flow when it directs the user agent of the resource owner to the authorization endpoint. The OAuth client includes its client identifier, requested scope, local state, and a redirection URI.
2. The authorization server authenticates the resource owner through the user agent and recognizes whether the resource owner grants or denies the access request.
3. If the resource owner grants access, the OAuth client uses the redirection URI provided earlier to redirect the user agent back to the OAuth client. The redirection URI includes an authorization code and any local state previously provided by the OAuth client.
4. The OAuth client requests an access token from the authorization server through the token endpoint. The OAuth client authenticates with its client credentials and includes the authorization code received in the previous step. The OAuth client also includes the redirection URI used to obtain the authorization code for verification.
5. The authorization server validates the client credentials and the authorization code. The server also ensures that the redirection URI received matches the URI used to redirect the client in Step 3. If valid, the authorization server responds back with an access token.

Implicit Grant

The implicit grant is similar to the authorization code grant with two distinct differences.

- It is used for user-agent-based clients. For example, single page web apps that cannot keep a client secret because all the application code and storage is easily accessible.
- Secondly, instead of the authorization server returning an authorization code which is exchanged for an access token, the authorization server returns an access token.

The following diagram describes the workflow of Impicit grant.



The workflow for implicit grant includes the following steps:

1. The OAuth client initiates the flow by directing the user agent of the resource owner to the authorization endpoint. The OAuth client includes its client identifier, requested scope, local state, and a redirection URI. The authorization server sends the user agent back to the redirection URI after access is granted or denied.
2. The authorization server authenticates the resource owner through the user agent and verifies whether the resource owner grants or denies the access request.
3. If the resource owner grants access, the authorization server redirects the user agent back to the client using the redirection URI provided earlier. The redirection URI includes the access token in the URI fragment.
4. The user agent follows the redirection instructions by making a request to the web server without the fragment. The user agent retains the fragment information locally.

5. The web server returns a web page, which is typically an HTML document with an embedded script. The web page accesses the full redirection URI including the fragment retained by the user agent. It can also extract the access token and other parameters contained in the fragment.
6. The user agent runs the script provided by the web server locally, which extracts the access token and passes it to the client.

Sample OAuth 2.0 Application Integrated with Advanced Authentication

To create a sample web application, you need Python v3 (the sample script prepared on v3.4.3).

The following web application describes the functionalities supported when Advanced Authentication is integrated with OAuth 2.0. OAuth 2.0 server is an authorization and resource server. As an Authorization Server, the OAuth server can prompt the users to go through authentication chains and as a resource server, the OAuth server can prompt the users to provide user details.

You must create the following five files:

1. **Sample script (oauth2_test.py)**

```
from bottle import Bottle, request, run, redirect, SimpleTemplate, template
from urllib.parse import urlparse, urlunparse, urlencode,quote
import urllib.request
import base64
import ssl
import json

app = Bottle()

client_id = 'id-rSCzuBLQgXCATfkXZ4fsedAo8sPsWxSs'
client_secret = 'secret-91DpzWFD26RriURR7KJ1pryFx7V9QeDm'
redirect_uri = 'http://localhost:8088/'  # this app callback URI
authorization_endpoint = 'https://192.168.0.151/osp/a/TOP/auth/oauth2/grant'
attributes_endpoint = 'https://192.168.0.151/osp/a/TOP/auth/oauth2/
getattributes'
state = {}

@app.get('/getattr')
def get_attributes():
    params = urlencode({
        'attributes': 'client username userRepository user_dn user_cn mail sid
upn netbiosName',
        'access_token': state['access_token']
    })
    url = attributes_endpoint + '?' + params
    print('getattr url: {}\n'.format(url))
    req = urllib.request.Request(url)
    gcontext = ssl.SSLContext(ssl.PROTOCOL_TLSv1_2)  # avoid cert checking
    with urllib.request.urlopen(req, context=gcontext) as response:  # perform
GET request and read response
        rsp = response.read()
    attributes = json.loads(rsp.decode('utf-8'))
    return template('attributes.html', items=attributes.items(),
refresh_token=urllib.parse.quote(state['refresh_token']))


@app.get('/')
```

```
def do_get():
    code = request.query.get('code')
    if code:
        # got code from OAuth 2 authentication server
        token = get_token_code(code)
        state.update(token)
        return template('token.html', items=token.items(),
refresh_token=urllib.parse.quote(token['refresh_token']))
    else:
        return template('main.html')


@app.get('/logon')
def do_logon():
    pr=list(urlparse(authorization_endpoint))
    # set query
    pr[4]=urlencode({
        'response_type': 'code',
        'client_id': client_id,
        'redirect_uri': redirect_uri
    })
    # perform redirection to OAuth 2 authentication server
    redirect(urlunparse(pr))

@app.get('/logon-implicit')
def do_logon_implicit():
    # parse authorization_endpoint URL
    pr = list(urlparse(authorization_endpoint))
    # set query
    pr[4] = urlencode({
        'response_type': 'token',
        'client_id': client_id,
    })
    # perform redirection to OAuth 2 authentication server
    redirect(urlunparse(pr))

@app.get('/logon-creds')
def do_logon_creds():
    return template('logonform.html')

@app.post('/logon-creds')
def do_logon_creds_post():
    username = request.forms.get('username')
    password = request.forms.get('password')
    token = get_token_password(username, password)
    state.update(token)
    return template('token.html', items=token.items(),
refresh_token=urllib.parse.quote(token['refresh_token']))

def get_token_password(username, password):
    # prepare POST parameters - encode them to urlencoded
    data = urlencode({
        'grant_type': 'password',
        'username': username,
        'password': password
    })
    data = data.encode('ascii')  # data should be bytes
    resp_text = post_data(data, prepare_headers())
    print(resp_text)
    return json.loads(resp_text)
```

```
@app.get('/refresh')
def do_refresh():
    token = refresh_access_token(request.query.get('refresh_token'))
    state.update(token)
    return template('token.html', items=token.items(),
refresh_token=state.get('refresh_token', ''))

def get_token_code(code):
    # prepare POST parameters - encode them to urlencoded
    data = urlencode({
        'grant_type': 'authorization_code',
        'code': code,
        'redirect_uri': redirect_uri
    })
    data = data.encode('ascii')  # data should be bytes
    resp_text = post_data(data, prepare_headers())
    print(resp_text)
    return json.loads(resp_text)

def refresh_access_token(refresh_token):
    print('refresh_token: {}'.format(refresh_token))
    # prepare POST parameters - encode them to urlencoded
    data = urlencode({
        'grant_type': 'refresh_token',
        'refresh_token': refresh_token,
    })
    data = data.encode('ascii')  # data should be bytes
    resp_text = post_data(data, prepare_headers())
    print(resp_text)
    return json.loads(resp_text)

def prepare_headers(use_content_type_hdr = True):
    hdrs = {
        'Authorization': 'Basic {}'.format(base64.b64encode(
            '{}:{}'.format(quote(client_id, safe=''), quote(client_secret,
safe='')).encode('ascii')).decode(
            'ascii')),
    }
    if use_content_type_hdr:
        hdrs.update({'Content-type': 'application/x-www-form-urlencoded'})
    return hdrs

def post_data(data, headers):
    print('post_data\nheaders:\n{}\ndata:\n{}'.format(headers, data))
    req = urllib.request.Request(authorization_endpoint, data, headers)
    gcontext = ssl.SSLContext(ssl.PROTOCOL_TLSv1_2)  # avoid cert checking
    with urllib.request.urlopen(req, context=gcontext) as response:  # perform
POST request and read response
        rsp = response.read()
    return rsp.decode('utf-8')


run(app, host='0.0.0.0', port=8088)
```

NOTE: In the script, you must change the values for `client_id`, `client_secret`, and Advanced Authentication server address in `authorization_endpoint` and `attributes_endpoint` (lines 10-14).

---

2. **Main menu (main.html)**

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head lang="en">
    <meta charset="UTF-8">
    <title></title>
    <script type="text/javascript">
         //<![CDATA[
            function getHashParam(name) {
                var hash = window.location.hash;
                if (hash) {
                    if (name = (new RegExp('[#&]' + encodeURIComponent(name) +
'=([^&]*)')).exec(hash))
                        return decodeURIComponent(name[1]);
                }
            }
            function showResult() {
                if (window.location.hash) {
                    document.getElementById('result').innerHTML = '<table
border="1">'+
                        '<tr><td>access_token</
td><td>'+getHashParam('access_token')+'</td></tr>'+
                        '<tr><td>token_type</
td><td>'+getHashParam('token_type')+'</td></tr>'+
                        '<tr><td>expires_in</
td><td>'+getHashParam('expires_in')+'</td></tr>'+
                        '</table>';
                } else {
                    document.getElementById('result').innerHTML = 'Implicit
granted token is not found';
                }
            }
          // ]]>
        </script>
</head>
<body onload="showResult();">
<div id="result">result</div><br/>
<br/>
Click <a href="/logon">here</a> to obtain an authentication token through
Authorization Code Grant<br/>
Click <a href="/logon-implicit">here</a> to obtain an authentication token
through Implicit Grant (the token will be received in hash part of THIS
page)<br/>
Click <a href="/logon-creds">here</a> to obtain an authentication token through
Resource Owner Password Credentials Grant<br/>
</body>
</html>
```

3. **Token information (token.html)**

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head lang="en">
    <meta charset="UTF-8">
    <title></title>
</head>
<body>
Token<br/>
<table border="1">
    % for k, v in items:
    <tr>
        <td>{{k}}</td>
        <td>{{v}}</td>
    </tr>
    % end
</table>
<br/>
<a href="/getattr">Get attributes</a><br/>
<a href="/refresh?refresh_token={{refresh_token}}">Refresh token</a>
</body>
</html>
```

4. **Attributes information (attributes.html)**

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head lang="en">
    <meta charset="UTF-8">
    <title></title>
</head>
<body>
Attributes<br/>
<table border="1">
    % for k, v in items:
    <tr>
        <td>{{k}}</td>
        <td>{{v}}</td>
    </tr>
    % end
</table>
<br/>
<a href="/refresh?refresh_token={{refresh_token}}">Refresh token</a>
</body>
</html>
```

5. **Logon form for Resource Owner Password Credentials Grant mode (logonform.html)**

```
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head lang="en">
    <meta charset="UTF-8">
    <title></title>
</head>
<body>
<form method="post" action="/logon-creds">
    User name: <input type="text" name="username"><br/>
    Password: <input type="password" name="password"><br/>
    <input type="submit">
</form>
</body>
</html>
```

Running the Sample Web Application

Perform the following steps to run the sample web application.

1. Run the script `python oauth2_test.py`.
2. Open the URL `http://localhost:8088`.

   A message is displayed with the following modes:

   ```
   Authorization Code Grant
   Implicit Grant (the token will be received in hash part of THIS page)
   Resource Owner Password Credentials Grant (is not supported by default but it
   can be activated in AAF)
   ```

3. Select the grant based on your requirement.
   - **Authorization Code Grant**
     1. Ensure that **Use for Owner Password Credentials** is set to **OFF** in the **Advanced settings** section for the OAuth 2.0 event.
     2. Click the first link.

        The NetIQ Access page is displayed with the user name request.
     3. Specify the **Username**.
     4. Click **Next**.
     5. Authenticate using all required methods of the chain.

        The result page shows the `access_token`, `token_type` and `expires_in`.
        - Click **Get attributes** to look at the attributes.
        - Click **Refresh token** to refresh token. The `access_token` value is updated.
   - **Implicit Grant**
     1. Ensure that **Use for Owner Password Credentials** is set to **OFF** in the **Advanced settings** section for the OAUTH 2.0 event.
     2. Click the first link.

        The NetIQ Access page is displayed with the user name request.
     3. Specify the **Username**.
     4. Click **Next**.
     5. Authenticate using all the required methods of the chain.

        The result page shows the `access_token`, `token_type` and `expires_in`.
   - **Resource Owner Password Credentials Grant**
     1. Open **Advanced settings** for the OAUTH 2.0 event.
     2. Set **Use for Owner Password Credentials** to **ON**.
     3. Click the third link.

        A request for Username and Password is displayed.
     4. Specify the username and password, then click **Submit**.

        The result page displays the `access_token`, `token_type`, and `expires_in`.

OAuth 2.0 Attributes

The following table displays the OAuth 2.0 attributes for a test user from the Active Directory.

Attribute	Value
`user_name`	pjones
`repository_name`	TESTCOMPANY
`naafUserSID`	S-1-5-21-3320677580-2179873152-1514081409-1103
`naafUserDN`	CN=Paul Jones,CN=Users,DC=testcompany,DC=local
`naafUserCN`	Paul Jones
`naafUserUPN`	pjones@testcompany.local
`naafUsernameNetBIOS`	TESTCOMPANY\pjones
`client`	id-0TRljvJEe3qKwJiXvy3IbjvcixfiiY1Q
`naafUserEmail`	pjones@testcompany.com

The following table displays the OAuth 2.0 attributes for a local user.

Attribute	Value
`user_name`	ADMIN
`repository_name`	LOCAL
`client`	id-0TRljvJEe3qKwJiXvy3IbjvcixfiiY1Q

The `client` attribute is a **Client ID** specified in the OAuth 2.0 settings.

Non Standard Endpoints

OSP provides a non-standard OAuth 2.0 endpoint for signing additional data that can be passed during the grant request. The URL of the sign endpoint is: `https://<serverip>/osp/a/TOP/auth/oauth2/sign`.

The sign endpoint helps to create a signed and encrypted data packet that can be used to supply data to other endpoints. For more information, see the Sign class documentation.

The only endpoint with which the signed data is currently used is the grant endpoint when it is used with the authorization code grant and implicit grant types.

The signed data can be used to supply one or both of the following:

- **Username**: Supplying the username for a client application is useful when you already know the username. For example, Advanced Authentication uses OSP for authentication after Advanced Authentication has obtained the username.
- **Advanced Authentication chain**: An Advanced Authentication server (5.6 or later) can be used to supply one or more additional authentication factors by authenticating with Advanced Authentication OAuth 2.0 for a user who is already authenticated. The username and name of the desired authentication chain containing the factor(s) is supplied.

You must be able to resolve username in an Advanced Authentication repository and you must configure the chain in the Advanced Authentication event for the OAuth 2.0 client used.

Submitting the Data

The sign endpoint is used by submitting a string value to the endpoint. The output is returned in a JSON structure.The output can be used with the grant endpoint with the **parameters** attribute.

You can accomplish OAuth 2.0 client authentication with HTTP **Basic** or **Bearer** authorization header value.

Request parameters

- **data** (required): The data to be signed and encrypted.

  The following JSON request object code is an example to sign an endpoint.

  ```
  {
      "username" : "< username >"
      "LoginParameters" :  {  "internal.osp.oidp.aa.chain-name" : "<chain name>" }
    }
  ```

  where username is name of the user trying to authenticate and chain name is name of the chain configured in the Advanced Authentication server.
- **ttl** (optional): The time-to-live period of the result data in milliseconds. If no value is supplied, then the default value of 30 seconds is used.

HTTP status codes

The following table describes the HTTP status codes.

HTTP Status Code	Description
200	The operation was successful.
400	The operation was unsuccessful. Additional error information may be found in the response content.
401	Client authentication missing or invalid.
500	A server error occurred.

The cause of the error can be determined from the additional error information found in the response content.

Response content

The response to a successful request is a serialized JSON object (XML is not currently supported).

The **data** field is the signed and encrypted data to be used with another endpoint. The **exp** field is the expiration time of the data as defined by RFC 7519. For more information, see the link (https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7519#section-4.1.4).

The following sample code in javascript is an example of the response content.

```
{
   "data":"_TXNCmy8ocXUg3Hg7u1TmRRJ3-2JQHcv3XggLbzhX2l6TcM-
11sfYlVatE6KIhP1.e1lJXX3Gj5UlFPoo03ig-4vczT2UtrAzbV4poyN592s~",
   "exp":1488210079
```

```
}
```

NOTE: The web authentication does not query the LDAP directly for users. Web authentication routes the request to the Advanced Authentication server internally. Therefore, if the Advanced Authentication server can match the inbound username with an appropriate attribute in the LDAP server, it would be same as what Advanced Authentication provides.

17 RADIUS Server

The Advanced Authentication server provides a built-in RADIUS server that can authenticate any RADIUS client using one of the chains configured for the event.

IMPORTANT

- The built-in RADIUS server supports only the PAP method.
- The RADIUS server supports the following authentication methods: **Email OTP**, **Emergency Password**, **LDAP Password**, **OATH OTP**, **Password**, **RADIUS Client**, **Security Questions**, **Smartphone**, **SMS OTP**, **Voice OTP**, and **Voice** methods.
- By design, Advanced Authentication does not support the single-factor authentication with a **Smartphone**, **Email OTP**, **SMS OTP**, **Security Questions**, **Voice OTP**, and **Voice** method for RADIUS. These methods cannot be the first or single method in a chain. It is recommended to use it in a two-factor chain with the **LDAP Password** method.

To configure pre-defined RADIUS Server event, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Events**.
2. Click **Edit** next to the **RADIUS Server** event.
3. Ensure that **Is enabled** is set to **ON**.
4. Select the chains that you want to assign to the event.
5. Select **RADIUS** from **Endpoint whitelist**.
6. Click **Add** to add and assign a RADIUS Client to the event:
   - **6a** Specify the IP address of the RADIUS Client in **IP Address**.
   - **6b** Specify the RADIUS Client name in **Name**.
   - **6c** Specify the RADIUS Client secret and confirm the secret.
   - **6d** Ensure that the RADIUS Client is set to **ON**.
   - **6e** Click next to the RADIUS Client.
   - **6f** Add more RADIUS Clients if required.
7. Set **Return user groups** to **ON** to enable the RADIUS server to return all the groups of a user in the `filter-id` attribute in an authentication response to the RADIUS Client.

   By default the option is set to **OFF** and the RADIUS server does not return the `filter-id` attribute in the authentication response.

   - **7a** Specify the preferred user groups in **User groups white list** to allow the RADIUS server to return only the specified groups of a user in the `filter-id` attribute to the RADIUS Client.

     If you set the **Return user groups** to **ON** and the **User groups white list** is empty, all the groups of a user are returned in the `filter-id` attribute.
   - **7b** You can specify any attribute you want to return instead of the `Filter-ID` attribute in **Groups attribute**. For example, you can specify the `class` attribute in **Groups attribute** and the `class` attribute will be returned instead of the `Filter-Id` attribute. By default, the `Filter-Id` attribute is returned in an authentication response to the RADIUS Client.

NOTE: It is recommended to enable the **Return user groups** option and specify the preferred user groups because in large environments a user can be part of many groups and as a result, the list of all groups that are returned by the RADIUS server can be large. The size of RADIUS response exceeds the maximum size of RADIUS packet.

8. (Optional) Specify **NAS ID** while adding custom RADIUS server event. You must use the same NAS ID on the configured RADIUS clients to associate them with the custom RADIUS server event.
9. Set **Bypass user lockout in repository** to **ON**, if you want to allow repository locked-out users to be authenticated on the Advanced Authentication. By default, **Bypass user lockout in repository** is set to **OFF** and users locked on repository is not allowed to authenticate.
10. Click **Save**.

IMPORTANT: If you use more than one chain with the RADIUS server, follow one of the following ways:

1. Each chain assigned to the RADIUS event may be assigned to a different LDAP group. For example, **LDAP Password+Smartphone** chain is assigned to a **Smartphone** users group, **LDAP Password+HOTP** chain is assigned to a HOTP users group. If a RADIUS user is a member of both groups, the top group is used.
2. By default, the top chain specified in the **RADIUS Server** event in which all the methods are enrolled is used. But, you can authenticate with the RADIUS authentication using another chain from the list when specifying `<username>&<chain shortname>` in **username**. For example, `pjones&sms`. Ensure that you have specified the short names for chains. Some RADIUS clients such as FortiGate do not support this option.

NOTE: If you use the `LDAP Password+Smartphone` chain, you can use an offline authentication by specifying the password in the format `<LDAP Password>&<Smartphone OTP>`. For example, `Q1w2e3r4&512385`. This option is supported for `LDAP Password+OATH TOTP`, `Password+Smartphone`, `Password+OATH TOTP`, `Password+OATH HOTP`.

When you want to add multiple RADIUS clients, you can add them to the predefined RADIUS Server event. But all the RADIUS clients will use the same authentication chain(s). If you want to configure specific authentication chain(s) for different RADIUS clients, then you must create a custom RADIUS event. While adding the custom RADIUS event ensure to specify NAS ID that is essential to associate clients with the custom RADIUS event.

For more information about the custom RADIUS event, see Creating a RADIUS Event.

NOTE: If the RADIUS log files are overflown of records with the error `Discarding duplicate request from client,` you can increase the timeout on the RADIUS Client. The optimal timeout value needs to be determined by experimenting. It must not exceed 60 seconds.

Customizing Prompt Messages For RADIUS Event

You can customize prompt messages of the authentication methods that are configured for the RADIUS event. The customized prompt messages are displayed when a user initiates authentication to RADIUS event using the configured methods.

For more information about customizing prompt message for RADIUS event, see Customizing Prompt Messages of the Authentication Methods for RADIUS Event.

Challenge-Response Authentication

If you have configured a multi-factor chain such as `LDAP Password&SMS OTP` or any other combination chain, some users (during the authentication) might not be able to specify the `<Password>&<OTP>` in a single line (because of the Password length limit in RADIUS). In this case, you can configure the existing RADIUS Client by performing the following steps:

1. Specify an LDAP password in **Password** and send the authentication request.

   Advanced Authentication server returns the access-challenge response with `State=<some value>` `(example: State=WWKNNLTTBxP6QYfiZIpvscyt7RYrYsGag4h8s0Rh8R)` and `Reply-Message=SMS OTP`. You will receive an SMS with a one-time password on the registered mobile.
2. Specify the OTP in **Password** and add an additional RADIUS attribute with `State=<value>` where, value is the value that is obtained in step 1.
3. Send the authentication request.

Using RADIUS in Multitenancy Mode

The following are the examples of integration with a RADIUS Server:

- Configuring Integration with Barracuda
- Configuring Integration with Citrix NetScaler
- Configuring Integration With Dell SonicWall SRA EX-Virtual Appliance
- Configuring Integration with FortiGate
- Configuring Integration with OpenVPN

18 SAML 2.0

SAML 2.0 is an XML-based protocol that uses security tokens containing assertions. The assertions are used for sending the information about a subject (an entity that is often a human user) from a SAML authority (Identity Provider) to a SAML consumer (Service Provider).

This chapter contains the following section:

- "Integrating Advanced Authentication with SAML 2.0" on page 181

Integrating Advanced Authentication with SAML 2.0

To integrate Advanced Authentication with the third-party solutions using SAML 2.0, perform the following steps

1. Click **Events > Add**.
2. Specify a name for the new event.
3. Change the **Event type** to **SAML2.**
4. Select the required chains for the event.
5. Copy and paste your Service Provider's SAML 2.0 metadata to **SP SAML 2.0 metadata**.

   OR

   Click **Browse** and select a Service Provider's SAML 2.0 metadata XML file to upload it.
6. Click **Policies > Web Authentication**.
7. (Conditional) Specify the Identity Provider's URL in **Identity provider URL**.

   NOTE: To use multiple Advanced Authentication servers with SAML 2.0, you must do the following:

   1. Configure an external .
   2. Specify the address in **Identity provider URL** instead of specifying an address of a single Advanced Authentication server.

   ---
8. Click **Download IdP SAML 2.0 Metadata** to open a metadata.The metadata opens in a new browser page.
9. Save the metadata (XML text) from the browser.
10. (Conditional) Use the downloaded metadata file in your Service Provider.
11. (Conditional) Use the Identity Provider certificate in your Service Provider.

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIDkzCCAnugAwIBAgIESsmdMzANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFADB6MRAwDgYDVQQGEwdVbmtub3duMRAw
DgYDVQQIEwdVbmtub3duMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdVbmtub3duMREwDwYDVQQKEwhBdXRoYXNhczESMBAG
A1UECxMJQXV0aGFzYXNhMRswGQYDVQQDExJvc3AuYXV0aGFzYXMubG9jYWwwHhcNMTYwNTI2MDUz
NjI0WhcNMjYwNDA0MDUzNjI0WjB6MRAwDgYDVQQGEwdVbmtub3duMRAwDgYDVQQIEwdVbmtub3du
MRAwDgYDVQQHEwdVbmtub3duMREwDwYDVQQKEwhBdXRoYXNhczESMBAGA1UECxMJQXV0aGFzYXNh
MRswGQYDVQQDExJvc3AuYXV0aGFzYXMubG9jYWwwggEiMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4IBDwAwggEK
AoIBAQCw3YLz03qhSZPXjBc/Ws+cZ2/E5oogqKeJ3p4RR6USOoarjnmvQPq+maRfvexriwQjRDgS
OFRb58cert/misqzsHBVmQDnfMwicFVzuuKjDEbWFp9vL1gRkDzIlpCyl3eNmBWuWXM49Z6mm8XS
fIwlAoydNp5DK0o0Yrk6FNOi0nOrnI5kHGVD0bd5SpDtvXSF1WLfc5YT9UBUpfZneKsVPWSkbeBX
F84hYJWBtdzcTEyjdso9Ra7UtxLIUW0UH3LWTgn9zS97nLkmhetmD1I3mEAeAE9SAmqTRyH1FNXZ
ZOfi/BJF4+sz86f6pBbwYM2KTvXaABgzSpZpJ1pQrZKPAgMBAAGjITAfMB0GA1UdDgQWBBTL8PbA
+e6YkBIk4yELTZ+AbfdA6DANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFAAOCAQEAm87lNyAO8CtN5jlLe3CupLAAbUWR
NY6av7LpPail1JRIw+uvddMyOz1vOS1IwpDDNtcPtxGXsaZI1CKgNPBpLvSxePVUXNfFgUCtu+bT
cuUtiQbkiDWwFLmAS6KeA+EBFOeqBiudEfkAZZT87DF9gKvM6VWdzJ7BvWi2YPbH/FRM82fLoyAd
RbphF215we3rvsfeWbwXw70UGNyBUTb3zUcAmB3sHbcZiXJZj3pJYgDaN9Ss60sz/yG1ZLEYluvL
R1T2PPEfEcA1Eij0R1A31Z5hJ3zDlXoCeNYLoMg4522QYekTwvQeWkeYejBXEcxdL7VP6F91zmfZ
bm1A4PY5jw==
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```


12 Change used hash to SHA-1 in your Service Provider, if the option is presented.

13 Set the **Send E-Mail as NameID (suitable for G-Suite)** option to **ON** for integrating with the G-suite.

14 Set the **Send SAMAccount as NameID** option to **ON** to send **SAMAccountName** in the **NameID** attribute as a SAML response from the Advanced Authentication server.

WARNING: You can set **Send SAMAccount as NameID** to **ON** only when the **Send E-Mail as NameID (suitable for G-Suite)** option is turned **OFF**.

---

15 Set **Bypass user lockout in repository** to **ON**, if you want to allow users who are locked on repository to authenticate on the Advanced Authentication. By default, **Bypass user lockout in repository** is set to **OFF** and users who are locked on repository are not allowed to authenticate.

The following are the examples of integration with SAML 2.0.

- Configuring Integration with Salesforce
- Configuring Integration with ADFS

Requesting Advanced Authentication Methods and Chains Through a SAML AuthnRequest

SAML 2.0 provides a mechanism to request an **authentication class reference**. For more information, see the SAML 2.0 Core specification (https://docs.oasis-open.org/security/saml/v2.0/saml-core-2.0-os.pdf) in **section 3.3.2.2.1**.

The Service Provider sends the following code in the `<AuthnRequest>`:

```
<samlp:RequestedAuthnContext>
<saml:AuthnContextClassRef>urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:ac:classes:MobileOneFactorC
ontract</saml:AuthnContextClassRef>
</samlp:RequestedAuthnContext>
```

SAML 2.0 defines a bunch of URNs that corresponds to authentication **classes**. For more information, see SAML 2.0 Authentication Context (http://docs.oasis-open.org/security/saml/v2.0/saml-authn-context-2.0-os.pdf).

Some of the authentication class types of Advanced Authentication match the SAML 2.0 references. The Advanced Authentication auth class types are defined in an enum named `AuthClassType`.

In this XML example, the SAML class reference URN maps to the Advanced Authentication's `AuthClassType.MOBILE_ONE_FACTOR_CONTRACT`. The Advanced Authentication value is mapped to `NaafAuthMethod.SMARTPHONE (or NaafAuthMethod.SWISSCOM)`.

The code in `NaafEventContractExecutable.filterChains` selects from the available chains any chain that contains one of its methods (in this example) SMARTPHONE or SWISSCOM. (The map from Advanced Authentication methods to OSP auth class type is `NaafContractExecutable.METHOD_TO_TYPE_MAP.`)

In this example, after the user is identified, if there is a chain available with the Smartphone or Swisscom methods, then the authentication proceeds. If not, the authentication fails and Advanced Authentication returns a `no requested authentication context` status to the Service Provider.

An optional `Comparison` attribute can be set on the `<RequestedAuthnContext>`. This attribute is defined in the SAML 2.0 Core specification (https://docs.oasis-open.org/security/saml/v2.0/saml-core-2.0-os.pdf) in **section 3.3.2.2.1**.

In addition to requesting the Advanced Authentication methods using the SAML 2.0-defined URNs, Advanced Authentication also has a special **contract parameters** class reference URN. The URN is: `urn:uuid:519a6c73-f092-43d3-ab11-8d789ebc2f79`.

The **contract parameters** are added through the URN **q-component**. The URN syntax is defined at RFC 8141 (https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc8141).

The `<NaafEvent>` contract executable contains attributes named `allowClientChainSelection` and `allowClientEventSelection`. These attributes allow the authentication chain and the authentication event to be selected through a **contract parameter** from the client, which in this example, is the SAML Service Provider. In the Advanced Authentication `authcfg.xml`, the default value of `allowClientEventSelection` is `false` and `allowClientChainSelection` is `true`.

For example, **ISM** is an event name with the following chains: LDAP+Smartphone, LDAP+SMS_OTP, LDAP+TOTP, LDAP+SecQuest, LDAP+U2F, and LDAP+Voice.

If the `<NaafEvent>` contract executable is configured with the **ISM** event, then the following code will request the LDAP+SMS_OTP chain.

```
<samlp:RequestedAuthnContext>
<saml:AuthnContextClassRef>urn:uuid:519a6c73-f092-43d3-ab11-
8d789ebc2f79?=internal.osp.oidp.aa.chain-name=LDAP%2BSMS_OTP</
saml:AuthnContextClassRef>
</samlp:RequestedAuthnContext>
```

The plus sign `'+'` is encoded as `'%2B'`. Advanced Authentication considers that the **q-component,** which starts with `?=`, is in the `x-www-form-urlencoded` format and '+' is a reserved character for this syntax.

The two contract parameters that are defined in the Advanced Authentication class `CFGNaafEvent` are:

- `internal.osp.oidp.aa.chain-name`
- `internal.osp.oidp.aa.event-name`

19 Examples of Integrations

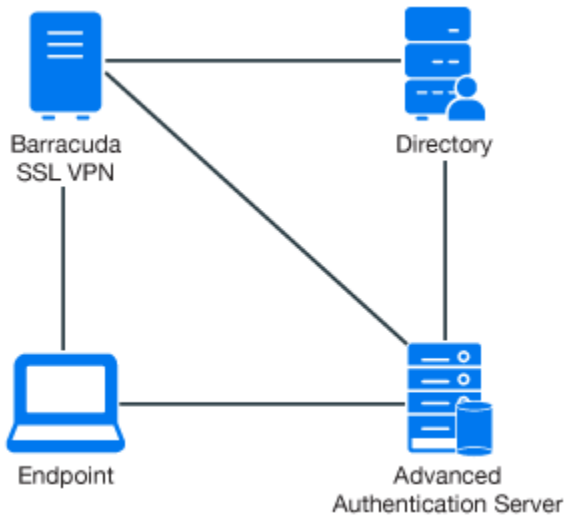
This chapter contains the following examples of third- party integrations.

- “Configuring Integration with Barracuda” on page 185
- “Configuring Integration with Citrix NetScaler” on page 187
- “Configuring Integration With Dell SonicWall SRA EX-Virtual Appliance” on page 189
- “Configuring Integration with FortiGate” on page 190
- “Configuring Integration with OpenVPN” on page 192
- “Configuring Integration with Palo Alto GlobalProtect Gateway” on page 193
- “Configuring Integration with Salesforce” on page 194
- “Configuring Integration with ADFS” on page 197
- “Configuring Integration with Google G Suite” on page 200
- “Configuring Integration with Office 365” on page 202
- “Configuring Integration with Sentinel” on page 205

Configuring Integration with Barracuda

This section provides the configuration information on integrating Advanced Authentication with Barracuda SSL VPN virtual appliance. This integration secures the Barracuda SSL VPN connection.

The following diagram represents integration of Advanced Authentication with Barracuda SSL VPN.



To configure the Advanced Authentication integration with Barracuda SSL VPN, perform the following configuration tasks:

- "Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server" on page 186
- "Configuring the Barracuda SSL VPN Appliance" on page 186
- "Authenticating on Barracuda SSL VPN Using Advanced Authentication" on page 187

Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server

1. Open the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.
2. Click **Events > RADIUS Server**.
3. Set **Is enabled** to **ON**.
4. Move one or more chains from **Available** to **Used** list. Ensure that the chains are assigned to the appropriate group of users in **Roles & Groups** of the **Chains** section.
5. Click **Client > Add**.
6. Specify an **IP address** of the Barracuda SSL VPN appliance.
7. Specify a secret and confirm it.
8. Set **Enabled** to **ON**.
9. Click **Save** in **Client**.
10. Click **Save** in **Events**.

Configuring the Barracuda SSL VPN Appliance

1. Sign-in to the Barracuda SSL VPN Configuration portal as **ssladmin**.
2. Click **Access Control > Configuration**.

3. Scroll down to **RADIUS**.
4. Specify an Advanced Authentication appliance IP address in **RADIUS Server**.
5. Specify a shared secret in **Shared Secret.**
6. Set **Authentication Method** to **PAP**.
7. Set **Reject Challenge** to **No** to allow challenge response.
8. Click **Save Changes**.
9. Click **Access Control > User Databases**.
10. Create a user database using the same storage as you are using for Advanced Authentication.
11. Click **Access Control > Authentication Schemes**.
12. Click **Edit** for the **Password** scheme for the user database.
13. Move **RADIUS** from **Available modules** to **Selected modules**.
14. Remove the **Password** module from the **Selected modules**.
15. Apply the changes.

Authenticating on Barracuda SSL VPN Using Advanced Authentication

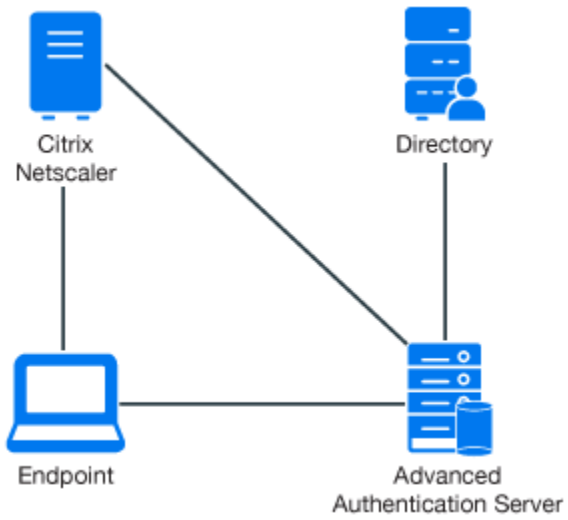
1 Specify the user's credentials.
2 Click **More** and select the configured user database (if the database is not selected by default).
3 Click **Log In** and approve the authentication on the user's smartphone.

NOTE: Advanced Authentication can be configured with the other authentication chains.

Configuring Integration with Citrix NetScaler

This section provides the configuration information on integrating Advanced Authentication with Citrix NetScaler VPX. This integration secures the Citrix NetScaler VPX connection.

The following diagram represents Advanced Authentication in Citrix NetScaler.



To configure the Advanced Authentication integration with Citrix NetScaler VPX, perform the following configuration tasks:

- "Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server" on page 187
- "Configuring the Citrix NetScaler Appliance" on page 188
- "Authenticating on the Citrix NetScaler Using Advanced Authentication" on page 188

Ensure that the following requirements are met:

- Citrix NetScaler VPX (version NS11.0 has been used to prepare these instructions) is installed.
- Advanced Authentication 5 appliance is installed.

Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server

1 Open the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.
2 Click **Events > RADIUS Server**.

3 Set **Is enabled** to **ON**.

4 Move one or more chains from **Available** to **Used** list. Ensure that the chains are assigned to the appropriate group of users in **Roles & Groups** of the **Chains** section.

5 Click **Client > Add**.

6 Specify an **IP address** of the Citrix NetScaler appliance.

7 Specify a secret and confirm it.

8 Set **Enabled** to **ON**.

9 Click **Save** in **Client**.

10 Click **Save** in **Events**.

Configuring the Citrix NetScaler Appliance

1 Sign-in to the Citrix NetScaler configuration portal as **nsroot**.

2 Click **Configuration > Authentication > Dashboard**.

3 Click **Add**.

4 Select **RADIUS** for **Choose Server Type**.

5 Specify **Name** of the Advanced Authentication server, **IP Address**, **Secret Key**, and **Confirm Secret Key.**

6 Change **Time-out (seconds)** to 120-180 seconds if you are using the Smartphone, SMS, Email or Voice methods.

7 Click **More** and ensure that **PAP** is selected in **Password Encoding**.

8 Click **Create**.

If the connection to the RADIUS server is valid, the **Up** status is displayed.

9 Click **Configuration > System > Authentication > RADIUS > Policy**.

10 Click **Add**.

11 Specify **Name** of the Authentication RADIUS Policy.

12 Select the created RADIUS server from **Server** and select **ns_true** from the **Saved Policy Expressions** list.

13 Click **Create**.

14 Select the created policy and click **Global Bindings**.

15 Click **Select Policy**.

16 Select the created policy.

17 Click **Bind**.

18 Click **Done**.

A check mark is displayed in the **Globally Bound** column.

Authenticating on the Citrix NetScaler Using Advanced Authentication

1 Specify the user's credentials then click **Login**.

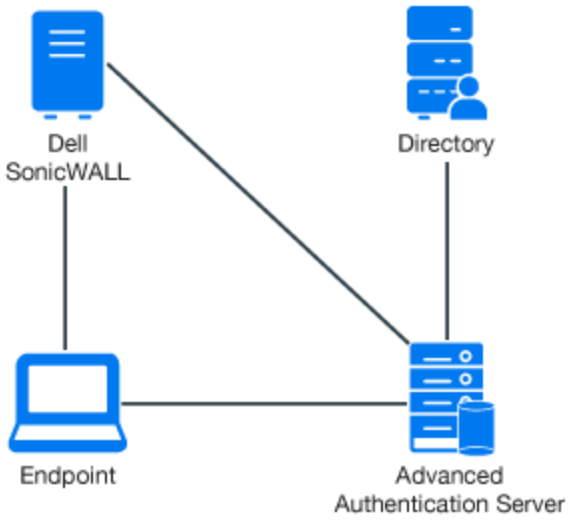
2 Accept the authentication on your smartphone.

NOTE: Advanced Authentication can be configured with other authentication chains.

Configuring Integration With Dell SonicWall SRA EX-Virtual Appliance

This section provides the configuration information on integrating Advanced Authentication with Dell SonicWall SRA EX-virtual appliance. This integration secures the Dell SonicWall SRA connection.

The following diagram represents Advanced Authentication in Dell SonicWall.



To configure the Advanced Authentication integration with Dell SonicWall SRA, perform the following configuration tasks:

- "Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server" on page 189
- "Configuring the Dell SonicWall SRA Appliance" on page 190
- "Authenticating on Dell SonicWall Workspace Using Advanced Authentication" on page 190

Ensure that the following requirements are met:

- Dell SonicWall SRA EX-Virtual appliance v11.2.0-258 is installed.
- Advanced Authentication v5 appliance is installed.

Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server

1. Open the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.
2. Click **Events > RADIUS Server**.
3. Set **Is enabled** to **ON**.
4. Move one or more chains from **Available** to **Used** list. Ensure that the chains are assigned to the appropriate group of users in **Roles & Groups** of the **Chains** section.
5. Click **Client > Add**.
6. Specify an **IP address** of the Dell SonicWall appliance.
7. Specify a secret and confirm it.

8 Set **Enabled** to **ON**.

9 Click **Save** in **Client**.

10 Click **Save** in **Events**.

Configuring the Dell SonicWall SRA Appliance

1. Sign-in to the Dell SonicWall SRA Management console as **admin**.
2. Click **User Access > Realms**.
3. Click **New realm**.
4. Create a **New Authentication Server** and set the **RADIUS** authentication directory.
5. Set **RADIUS Server** and **Shared key**.
6. Save and apply the configuration.
7. Click **User Access > Realms**.

   Review the realm diagram.

Authenticating on Dell SonicWall Workspace Using Advanced Authentication

1 Open a browser and navigate to the workplace.

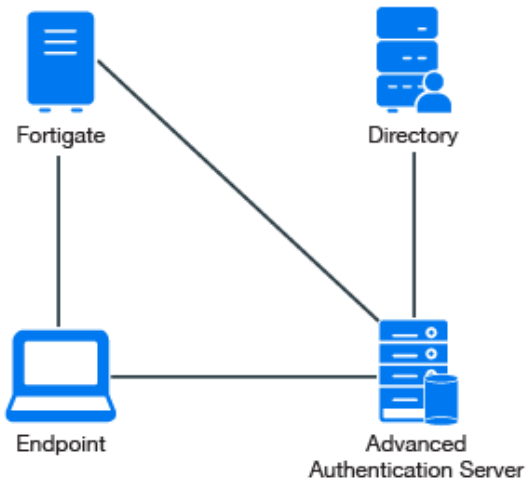
2 Specify your username and LDAP password.

3 Specify the **SMS OTP** and click **OK**.

Configuring Integration with FortiGate

This section provides the configuration information on integrating Advanced Authentication with FortiGate. This integration secures the FortiGate connection.

The following diagram represents Advanced Authentication in FortiGate.



To configure the Advanced Authentication integration with FortiGate perform the following configuration tasks:

- "Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server" on page 191
- "Configuring the FortiGate Appliance" on page 191
- "Authenticating on FortiGate Using Advanced Authentication" on page 191

Ensure that the following requirements are met:

- Fortinet virtual appliance v5 (Firmware version 5.2.5, build 8542 has been used to prepare these instructions) is installed.
- Advanced Authentication v5 appliance is installed.

Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server

1. Open the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.
2. Click **Events > RADIUS Server.**
3. Set **Is enabled** to **ON**.
4. Move one or more chains from **Available** to **Used** list. Ensure that the chains are assigned to the appropriate group of users in **Roles & Groups** of the **Chains** section.
5. Click **Client > Add**.
6. Specify an **IP address** of the FortiGate appliance.
7. Specify a secret and confirm it.
8. Set **Enabled** to **ON**.
9. Click **Save** in **Client**.
10. Click **Save** in **Events**.

Configuring the FortiGate Appliance

1. Sign-in to FortiGate configuration portal as **admin**.
2. Check which **Virtual Domain** is bound to the network interface.
3. Open the RADIUS Server configuration for an appropriate **Virtual Domain** and setup the required settings.
4. Click **Test Connectivity** and specify the credentials of Advanced Authentication administrator to test the connection.
5. Create a user group and bind it to a remote authentication server.
6. Create user and place in the created group.

Authenticating on FortiGate Using Advanced Authentication

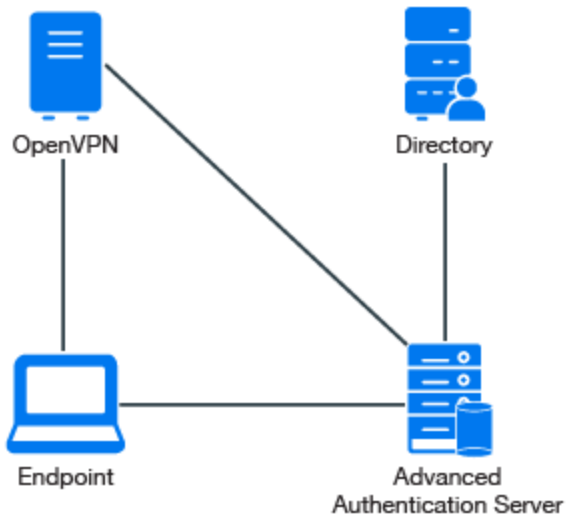
1. Specify the user's credentials and click **Login**.
2. Specify the OTP and click **Login**.

NOTE: The **Token Code** field has a limitation of 16 digits. Therefore, you may face issues when using the YubiKey tokens with 18-20 digits code.

Configuring Integration with OpenVPN

This section provides the configuration information on integrating Advanced Authentication with OpenVPN virtual appliance. This integration secures the OpenVPN connection.

The following diagram represents Advanced Authentication in OpenVPN.



To configure the Advanced Authentication integration with OpenVPN perform the following configuration tasks:

- "Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server" on page 192
- "Configuring the OpenVPN Appliance" on page 193

Ensure that the following requirements are met:

- OpenVPN v2 appliance (version 2.0.10 was used to prepare these instructions) is installed.
- Advanced Authentication v5 appliance with a configured repository is installed.

Configuring the Advanced Authentication RADIUS Server

1. Open the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.
2. Click **Events > RADIUS Server**.
3. Set **Is enabled** to **ON**.
4. Move one or more chains from **Available** to **Used** list. Ensure that the chains are assigned to the appropriate group of users in **Roles & Groups** of the **Chains** section.
5. Click **Client > Add**.
6. Specify an **IP address** of the OpenVPN appliance.
7. Specify a secret and confirm it.
8. Set **Enabled** to **ON**.
9. Click **Save** in **Client**.
10. Click **Save** in **Events**.

Configuring the OpenVPN Appliance

1. Open the **OpenVPN Access Server** site.
2. Click **Authentication > RADIUS**.
3. Enable the **RADIUS** authentication.
4. Select **PAP** authentication method.
5. Add an IP address of the Advanced Authentication v5 appliance and specify the secret.

You must specify the `<repository name>\<username>` or only `<username>`, if you have set the following configurations:

- You have selected a chain from the **Used** section in the **RADIUS Server** settings for connecting to OpenVPN.
- You have set the default repository name in **Policies > Login options** of the Advanced Authentication v5 appliance.

If you have assigned multiple chains in the **Used** section of the RADIUS event for connecting to OpenVPN, then you must specify `<username>&<chain shortname>` in the **username**.

NOTE: For some authentication methods, the correct time must be configured on the OpenVPN appliance. You can sync the time of the OpenVPN appliance using the following commands:

```
/etc/init.d/ntp stop
```

```
/usr/sbin/ntpdate pool.ntp.org
```

User Account Locks After Three Successful Authentications with SMS AP to OpenVPN

Issue: While authenticating with the SMS method to connect to OpenVPN, after three successful authentications the user account is locked by OpenVPN.

Workaround: OpenVPN assumes each attempt of the challenge response (request of additional data in chain) as an error.

To resolve the issue, you must change the number of failures that can be accepted. For more information, see Authentication failure lockout policy.

Configuring Integration with Palo Alto GlobalProtect Gateway

This section provides the configuration information on integrating Advanced Authentication with Palo Alto GlobalProtect Gateway. This integration secures the Palo Alto GlobalProtect Gateway connection.

NOTE: This configuration has been tested with PAN-OS 6.1.5 to 7.1.x and GlobalProtect 2.1x.

To configure the Advanced Authentication integration with Palo Alto GlobalProtect Gateway, perform the following configuration tasks:

- "Adding the RADIUS Server" on page 194
- "Adding an Authentication Profile" on page 194
- "Configuring GlobalProtect Gateway" on page 194

Adding the RADIUS Server

1. Log in to the Palo Alto administrative interface.
2. Click **Device > Server Profiles > RADIUS**.
3. Click **Add** to add a new RADIUS server profile.
4. Specify **NetIQ RADIUS** in **Name**.
5. Specify 30 in **Timeout**.
6. In the **Servers** section, click **Add** to add a RADIUS server and specify the following information:
   - **Profile Name**
   - Set **Timeout and Retries** in **Server Settings**
   - Details in the **Servers** section
7. Click **Add** and configure a connection to the RADIUS server built-in to the Advanced Authentication server.
8. Click **OK**.

Adding an Authentication Profile

1. Click **Device > Authentication Profile.**
2. Click **New** to add a new authentication profile.
3. Specify the Authentication Profile details such as the server type and user domain.

Configuring GlobalProtect Gateway

1. Click **Network > GlobalProtect > Gateways**.
2. Click on your configured GlobalProtect Gateway to open the properties window.
3. In the **Authentication** section of the **GlobalProtect Gateway General properties** tab, select the **NetIQ authentication profile** created in Add an Authentication Profile from the list.
4. Click **OK** to save the GlobalProtect Gateway settings.

Configuring Integration with Salesforce

This section provides the configuration information on integrating Advanced Authentication with Salesforce. This integration secures the Salesforce connection.

The following diagram represents Advanced Authentication in Salesforce.

To configure the Advanced Authentication integration with Salesforce, perform the following configuration tasks:

- "Configuring the Salesforce Domain Name" on page 195
- "Configuring the SAML Provider" on page 195
- "Configuring the Advanced Authentication SAML 2.0 Event" on page 196
- "Configuring to Authenticate on Salesforce with SAML 2.0" on page 197

Configuring the Salesforce Domain Name

1 Login to your Salesforce account.

2 Create a domain. If the domain is not created, then perform the following tasks:

   2a Click **Gear** and select **Setup Home** in the **Lightning Experience** interface.

   2b Scroll down the setup toolbar and navigate to **Company Settings**.

   2c Click **My Domain**.

   2d Specify your domain name and click **Save**.

   The domain is activated. Use your domain name to open Salesforce. For example, `https://CompanyName.my.salesforce.com/`. SAML provider requires the domain name.

Configuring the SAML Provider

1 Click **Settings > Identity > Single Sign-On Settings**.

2 Create a text file and add the following Identity Provider certificate to the file.


```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIDkzCCAnugAwIBAgIESsmdMzANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFADB6MRAwDgYDVQQGEwdVbmtub3duMRAw
DgYDVQQIEwdVbmtub3duMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdVbmtub3duMREwDwYDVQQKEwhBdXRoYXNhczESMBAG
A1UECxMJQXV0aGFzYXNhMRswGQYDVQQDExJvc3AuYXV0aGFzYXMubG9jYWwwHhcNMTYwNTI2MDUz
NjI0WhcNMjYwNDA0MDUzNjI0WjB6MRAwDgYDVQQGEwdVbmtub3duMRAwDgYDVQQIEwdVbmtub3du
MRAwDgYDVQQHEwdVbmtub3duMREwDwYDVQQKEwhBdXRoYXNhczESMBAGA1UECxMJQXV0aGFzYXNh
MRswGQYDVQQDExJvc3AuYXV0aGFzYXMubG9jYWwwggEiMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4IBDwAwggEK
AoIBAQCw3YLz03qhSZPXjBc/Ws+cZ2/E5oogqKeJ3p4RR6USOoarjnmvQPq+maRfvexriwQjRDgS
OFRb58cert/misqzsHBVmQDnfMwicFVzuuKjDEbWFp9vL1gRkDzIlpCyl3eNmBWuWXM49Z6mm8XS
fIwlAoydNp5DK0o0Yrk6FNOi0nOrnI5kHGVD0bd5SpDtvXSF1WLfc5YT9UBUpfZneKsVPWSkbeBX
F84hYJWBtdzcTEyjdso9Ra7UtxLIUW0UH3LWTgn9zS97nLkmhetmD1I3mEAeAE9SAmqTRyH1FNXZ
ZOfi/BJF4+sz86f6pBbwYM2KTvXaABgzSpZpJ1pQrZKPAgMBAAGjITAfMB0GA1UdDgQWBBTL8PbA
+e6YkBIk4yELTZ+AbfdA6DANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFAAOCAQEAm87lNyAO8CtN5jlLe3CupLAAbUWR
NY6av7LpPail1JRIw+uvddMyOz1vOS1IwpDDNtcPtxGXsaZI1CKgNPBpLvSxePVUXNfFgUCtu+bT
cuUtiQbkiDWwFLmAS6KeA+EBFOeqBiudEfkAZZT87DF9gKvM6VWdzJ7BvWi2YPbH/FRM82fLoyAd
RbphF215we3rvsfeWbwXw70UGNyBUTb3zUcAmB3sHbcZiXJZj3pJYgDaN9Ss60sz/yG1ZLEYluvL
R1T2PPEfEcA1Eij0R1A31Z5hJ3zDlXoCeNYLoMg4522QYekTwvQeWkeYejBXEcxdL7VP6F91zmfZ
bm1A4PY5jw==
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

3 In **Single Sign-On Settings,** click **New** and specify the following details:

   1. **Name**: Advanced Authentication.
   2. **API Name**: AAF.
   3. **Issuer**: `https://AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress/osp/a/TOP/auth/saml2/metadata`, where you must replace `AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress` with the domain name or IP address of your Advanced Authentication server.
   4. **Entity ID**: `https://CompanyName.my.salesforce.com/`.
   5. Click **Browse** to open the Identity Provider certificate.
   6. **SAML Identity Type**: Select **Assertion contains the Federation ID from the User object**.
   7. **SAML Identity Location**: Select **Identity is in an Attribute element**.
   8. **Attribute Name**: upn.
   9. **Service Provider Initiated Request Binding**: Select **HTTP Redirect**.
   10. **Identity Provider Login URL**: `https://AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress/osp/a/TOP/auth/saml2/sso`.
   11. Select **User Provisioning Enabled**.
   12. Click **Save**.

4 Click **Edit** for Federated Single Sign-On Using SAML.

5 Select **SAML Enabled**.

6 Click **Save**.

7 Click **Settings > Users.**

8 Click **Edit** for the required Salesforce users by adding **Federation ID** for the user accounts. The Federation ID corresponds to `userPrincipalName` attribute in Active Directory. For example, pjones@company.com.

NOTE: The name that you specify in **Federation ID** is case sensitive. The following error may occur, if you ignore the case:

```
We can't log you in. Check for an invalid assertion in the SAML Assertion
Validator (available in Single-Sign On Settings) or check the login history for
failed logins.
```

---

9 Click your profile icon and click **Switch to Salesforce Classic**.

   This mode is required to tune the domain options.

10 Click **Setup Administrator > Domain Management > My Domain > Edit** to access the **Authentication Configuration** screen.

11 Select **Login Page** and **osp options**.

12 Click **Save**.

Configuring the Advanced Authentication SAML 2.0 Event

1 Click **username > Switch to Lightning Experience**.

2 Click **Gear** and select **Setup Home**.

3 Navigate to **Identity > Single Sign-On Settings**.

4 Click the created configuration (not for Edit).

5 Click **Download Metadata.**

6 Open the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.

7 Click **Events > Add** to add a new event.

8 Create an event with the following parameters.

- Name: Salesforce
- Chains: select the required chains.
- Click **Browse** to Upload SP SAML 2.0 metadata file. Open the Salesforce metadata file and click **Save**.

Configuring to Authenticate on Salesforce with SAML 2.0

1 Click **Policies > Web Authentication.**

2 Set **Identity provider URL** to `https://AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress/` and replace `AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress` with domain name or IP address of your Advanced Authentication server.

NOTE: To use multiple Advanced Authentication servers with SAML 2.0, you must do the following:

1. Configure an external .
2. Specify the address with port number in **Identity provider URL** instead of specifying an address of a single Advanced Authentication server.

IMPORTANT: You must use the server name or IP address specified in the **Issuer** field of Salesforce.

---

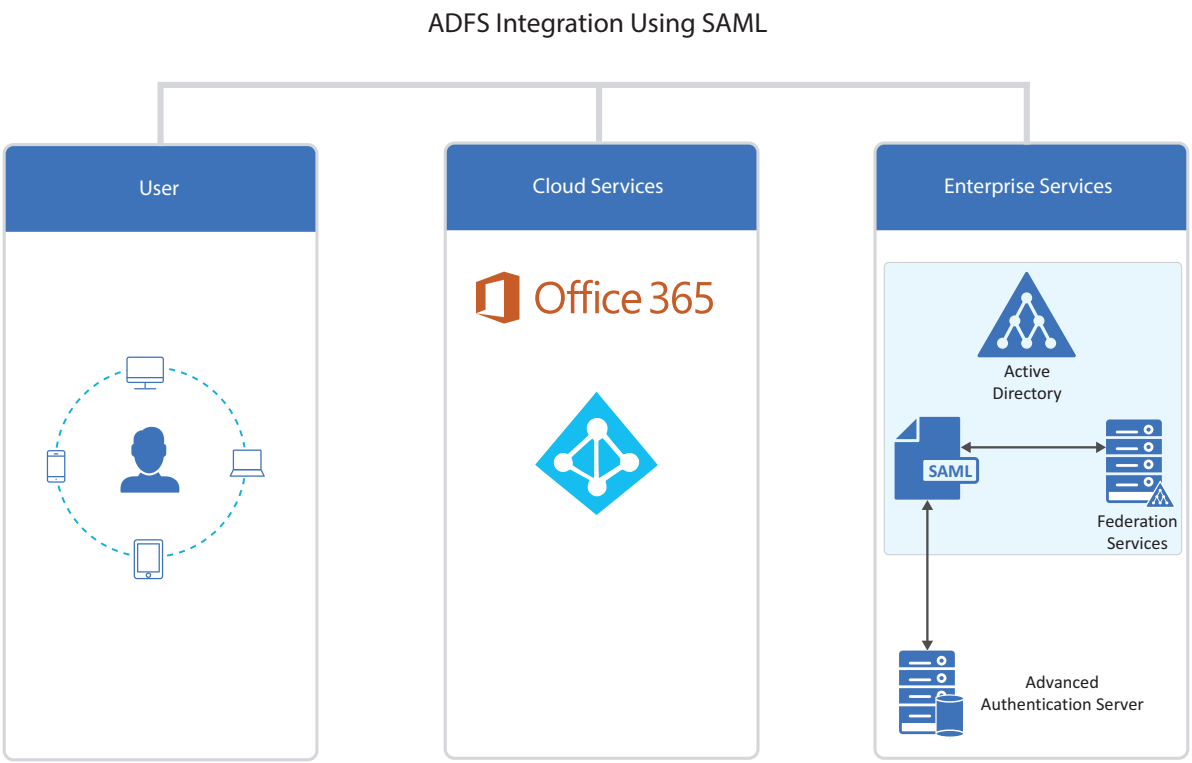
3 Open the URL `https://CompanyName.my.salesforce.com/` and click **Advanced Authentication** to check the SAML 2.0 authentication.

Configuring Integration with ADFS

This section provides the configuration information on integrating Advanced Authentication with ADFS (Active Directory Federation Services). This integration secures the ADFS connection.

The following diagram represents Advanced Authentication and ADFS integration using SAML.

Figure 19-1



To configure the Advanced Authentication integration with ADFS using SAML 2.0 perform the following configuration tasks:

NOTE: These instructions are valid only for ADFS 3 and 4.

- "Configuring the Advanced Authentication SAML 2.0 Event" on page 198
- "Making the Corresponding Changes in ADFS" on page 199

Configuring the Advanced Authentication SAML 2.0 Event

1. Open the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.
2. Click **Events > Add** to add a new event.
3. Create an event with the following parameters:
   - Name: `ADFS_SAML`.
   - Event Type: **SAML 2**.
   - Chains: Select the required chains.
   - Paste the content of the file `https://<adfs_hostname>/FederationMetadata/2007-06/FederationMetadata.xml` to **SP SAML 2.0 meta data**.

     Or
     - Click **Browse** and upload the saved XML file.
   - Click **Save**.

NOTE: Verify that you can access the file in your browser. If the file is not displayed, you have an issue on ADFS that you must resolve.

4 Click **Policies > Web Authentication.**

5 Set **Identity provider URL** to `https://AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress/` and replace `AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress` with domain name or IP address of your Advanced Authentication server.

NOTE: To use multiple Advanced Authentication servers with SAML 2.0, you must do the following:

1. Configure an external .
2. Specify the address in **Identity provider URL** instead of specifying an address of a single Advanced Authentication server.

6 Click **Download IdP SAML 2.0 Metadata**.

You must open the file as an XML file.

NOTE: If `{"Fault":{... ` is displayed, you must verify the configuration.

Making the Corresponding Changes in ADFS

1 Open the ADFS management console.

2 Expand **Trust Relationships**.

3 Click **Add Claims Provider trust**.

4 Paste OSP metadata URL `https://<AAF_server_hostname>/osp/a/TOP/auth/saml2/metadata.`

It may not work for self-signed certificate. You can copy metadata from OSP URL to an XML file and provide the file name.

5 Specify the **Display name**.

6 Select **Open the Edit Claim Rules dialog for this claims provider when the wizard closes**.

7 In **Edit Claims Rules**, click **Add Rule**.

8 Select **Send Claims Using a Custom Rule**.

9 Click **Next**.

10 Specify **Claim rule name**.

11 Paste Custom rule and click **Finish**.

```
 c:[Type == "upn"]
=> issue(Type = "http://schemas.xmlsoap.org/ws/2005/05/identity/claims/upn",
Issuer = c.Issuer, OriginalIssuer = c.OriginalIssuer, Value = c.Value,
ValueType = c.ValueType);
```

12 In **ADFS snap-in**, double click on the provider name.

13 Click **Advanced**.

14 Move the hash algorithm from SHA-256 to SHA1.

15 Click **OK**.

Configuring Integration with Google G Suite

This section provides the configuration information on integrating Advanced Authentication with Google G Suite. This integration secures the connection.

The following diagram represents Advanced Authentication in Google G Suite.

To configure the Advanced Authentication integration with Google G Suite using SAML 2.0, perform the following configuration tasks:

- "Configuring Google G Suite" on page 200
- "Configuring the Advanced Authentication Event" on page 202
- "Configuring to Authenticate on Google G-Suite with SAML 2.0" on page 202

NOTE: As a prerequisite, ensure that you finalize the setup of G Suite by accepting the agreement and clicking **Finalize setup**.

Configuring Google G Suite

1. Login to the Google's Administration console.
2. Open the **Security** section.
3. Expand **Set up single sign-on (SSO)**.
4. Enable **Setup SSO with third party identity provider**.
5. Specify the following parameters:
   - **5a** **Sign-in page URL**: `https://<AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress>/osp/a/TOP/auth/saml2/sso`. Replace `AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress` with the domain name or IP address of your Advanced Authentication server.
   - **5b** **Sign-out page URL**: `https://<AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress>/osp/a/TOP/auth/app/logout`.
   - **5c** **Change password URL**: `https://<AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress>` or Self-Service Password Reset URL.
   - **5d** Create a text file and add the Identity Provider Certificate to it.

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIDkzCCAnugAwIBAgIESsmdMzANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFADB6MRAwDgYDVQQGEwdVbmtub3duMR
Aw
DgYDVQQIEwdVbmtub3duMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdVbmtub3duMREwDwYDVQQKEwhBdXRoYXNhczESMB
AG
A1UECxMJQXV0aGFzYXNhMRswGQYDVQQDExJvc3AuYXV0aGFzYXMubG9jYWwwHhcNMTYwNTI2MD
Uz
NjI0WhcNMjYwNDA0MDUzNjI0WjB6MRAwDgYDVQQGEwdVbmtub3duMRAwDgYDVQQIEwdVbmtub3
du
MRAwDgYDVQQHEwdVbmtub3duMREwDwYDVQQKEwhBdXRoYXNhczESMBAGA1UECxMJQXV0aGFzYX
Nh
MRswGQYDVQQDExJvc3AuYXV0aGFzYXMubG9jYWwwggEiMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA4IBDwAwgg
EK
AoIBAQCw3YLz03qhSZPXjBc/Ws+cZ2/
E5oogqKeJ3p4RR6USOoarjnmvQPq+maRfvexriwQjRDgS
OFRb58cert/
misqzsHBVmQDnfMwicFVzuuKjDEbWFp9vL1gRkDzIlpCyl3eNmBWuWXM49Z6mm8XS
fIwlAoydNp5DK0o0Yrk6FNOi0nOrnI5kHGVD0bd5SpDtvXSF1WLfc5YT9UBUpfZneKsVPWSkbe
BX
F84hYJWBtdzcTEyjdso9Ra7UtxLIUW0UH3LWTgn9zS97nLkmhetmD1I3mEAeAE9SAmqTRyH1FN
XZ
ZOfi/
BJF4+sz86f6pBbwYM2KTvXaABgzSpZpJ1pQrZKPAgMBAAGjITAfMB0GA1UdDgQWBBTL8PbA
+e6YkBIk4yELTZ+AbfdA6DANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQsFAAOCAQEAm87lNyAO8CtN5jlLe3CupLAAbU
WR
NY6av7LpPail1JRIw+uvddMyOz1vOS1IwpDDNtcPtxGXsaZI1CKgNPBpLvSxePVUXNfFgUCtu+
bT
cuUtiQbkiDWwFLmAS6KeA+EBFOeqBiudEfkAZZT87DF9gKvM6VWdzJ7BvWi2YPbH/
FRM82fLoyAd
RbphF215we3rvsfeWbwXw70UGNyBUTb3zUcAmB3sHbcZiXJZj3pJYgDaN9Ss60sz/
yG1ZLEYluvL
R1T2PPEfEcA1Eij0R1A31Z5hJ3zDlXoCeNYLoMg4522QYekTwvQeWkeYejBXEcxdL7VP6F91zm
fZ
bm1A4PY5jw==
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```


5e Upload the Identity Provider Certificate.

6 Clear **Use a domain specific issuer** if you have one domain in G Suite or select the option if you have more than one domain in G Suite.

Ensure that you have a user account in a repository that corresponds to a user account in Google. An email address specified in the **Contact information** for the Google account must be the same as an address from email attribute for the corresponding account of your repository.

NOTE: You cannot use the Google administrator account with SAML.

---

7 Create a new text file and add the Service Provider metadata to it:

```
<EntityDescriptor entityID="google.com"
xmlns="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:metadata">
    <SPSSODescriptor
protocolSupportEnumeration="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:protocol">
        <NameIDFormat>urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:1.1:nameid-format:emailAddress</
NameIDFormat>
        <AssertionConsumerService index="1"
Binding="urn:oasis:names:tc:SAML:2.0:bindings:HTTP-POST"
            Location="https://www.google.com/a/mycompany.com" />
    </SPSSODescriptor>
</EntityDescriptor>
```

Replace `mycompany.com` in the Location URL to your primary domain from the **Domains** settings in Google.

NOTE: You must use the Service Provider metadata when one domain exists in the G Suite. If you have more than one domain in G Suite, then every Service Provider metadata for each domain must have `google.com` as an entityID replaced with `google.com/mycompany.com`, where `mycompany.com` is your domain name.

---

8 Save the text file with a `.xml` extension.

Configuring the Advanced Authentication Event

1 Open the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.

2 Click **Events > Add** to add a new event with the following options:

   2a Name: Google

   2b Chains: select the required chains.

   2c Click **Browse** to upload the XML file.

   2d Set **Send E-Mail as NameID (suitable for G-Suite)** to **ON**. This is applicable for the G-Suite.

   2e Click **Save**.

Configuring to Authenticate on Google G-Suite with SAML 2.0

1 In **Policies > Web Authentication**, set **Identity provider URL** to `https://AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress/` and replace `AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress` with domain name or IP address of your Advanced Authentication server.

NOTE: To use multiple Advanced Authentication servers with SAML 2.0, you must do the following:

1. Configure an external .
2. Specify the address in **Identity provider URL** instead of specifying an address of a single Advanced Authentication server.

---

2 Open the Google Sign in page and specify an email address of the user from **Basic information** of the Google account (email address of Google account).

Google redirects to the Advanced Authentication server, where the user must authenticate. After successful authentication, the Advanced Authentication server redirects the user back to Google.

Configuring Integration with Office 365

This section provides the configuration information on integrating Advanced Authentication with Office 365. This integration secures the connection.

The following diagram represents integration of Advanced Authentication with Office 365.

To configure the integration of Advanced Authentication with Office 365, perform the following tasks:

- "Configuring Advanced Authentication SAML 2.0 Event" on page 203
- "Making the Corresponding Changes in ADFS" on page 204
- "Authenticating on Office 365" on page 204

Ensure that the following requirements are met:

- ADFS v4.0, Domain Controller, and other components must be configured to work with Microsoft Office 365.

Configuring Advanced Authentication SAML 2.0 Event

1. Open the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.
2. Click **Events > Add** to add a new event.
3. Create an event with the following parameters:
   - Name: **Office 365**
   - Event Type: **SAML 2**.
   - Chains: Select the required chains.
   - Paste the content of the file `https://<adfs_hostname>/FederationMetadata/2007-06/FederationMetadata.xml` to **SP SAML 2.0 meta data**.

     Or

     - Click **Browse** and upload the saved XML file.
   - Click **Save**.

   NOTE: Verify that you can access the file in your browser. If the file is not displayed, you have an issue on ADFS that you must resolve.

4. Click **Policies > Web Authentication**.
5. Set the **External URL** to `https://AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress/` and replace `AdvancedAuthenticationServerAddress` with domain name or IP address of your Advanced Authentication server.

   NOTE: To use multiple Advanced Authentication servers with SAML 2.0, you must do the following:

   1. Configure an external .
   2. Specify the address in **External URL** instead of specifying an address of a single Advanced Authentication server.

6. Click **Download IdP SAML 2.0 Metadata**.

   You must open the file as an XML file.

NOTE: If `{"Fault":{... ` is displayed, you must verify the configuration.

7 Click **Save**.

Making the Corresponding Changes in ADFS

1 Open the ADFS management console.

2 Click **Claims Provider Trusts > Add Claims Provider trust**.

3 Click **Start** in the **Add Claims Provider Trust Wizard**.

4 Click **Import data about the claims provider from a file** in the **Select Data Source** tab.

5 Browse the **Federation metadata file**.

You can download the Federation metadata from the Advanced Authentication metadata URL: `https://<aaf-server>/osp/a/TOP/auth/saml2/metadata`.

6 Click **Next**.

7 Specify the **Display name**.

8 Click **Next**.

9 Select **Open the Edit Claim Rules dialog for this claims provider when the wizard closes**.

10 Click **Close**.

11 Right-click the **Display name** and click **Edit Claim Rules**.

12 Click **Add Rule**.

13 Select **Send Claims Using a Custom Rule from Claim rule template** in the **Add Transform Claim Rule Wizard**.

14 Click **Next**.

15 Specify the **Claim rule name**.

16 Paste the following in **Custom rule**:

```
c:[Type == "netbiosName"]
 => issue(Type = "http://schemas.microsoft.com/ws/2008/06/identity/claims/
windowsaccountname", Issuer = c.Issuer, OriginalIssuer = c.OriginalIssuer,
Value = c.Value, ValueType = c.ValueType);
```

17 Click **OK**.

Authenticating on Office 365

1 Launch `http://office.com/`.

2 Login with your credentials.

3 Select **Advanced Authentication** to go through the multi-factor authentication.

4 You will be redirected to the OAuth or SAML Login page.

5 You must go through the specified chains for authentication.

Configuring Integration with Sentinel

This section provides the configuration information about integrating Advanced Authentication with Sentinel for managing logs. With this integration the syslog files are gathered and transmitted from Advanced Authentication to Sentinel sever, where an administrator can search the events to analyze, monitor, and generate a report.

To configure the integration of Advanced Authentication with Sentinel, perform the following tasks:

- "Configuring the CEF Log Forward Policy on Advanced Authentication" on page 205
- "Searching the Events on Sentinel" on page 205

Configuring the CEF Log Forward Policy on Advanced Authentication

To forward the syslog details to Sentinel, you must configure the **CEF log Forward** policy by performing the following steps:

1. Open the Advanced Authentication Administration portal.
2. Click **Policy > CEF Log Forward**.
3. Specify the Sentinel server IP address in **Syslog server**.
4. Specify the port number in **Port**.

   For example, you can specify 1443.
5. Select the transport layer details in **Transport**.

   For example, you can select **TCP with TLS.**
6. Click **Save**.
7. Restart the Advanced Authentication server to apply the changes.

Searching the Events on Sentinel

1. Open the Sentinel console.
2. Specify the query `((sev:[0 TO 5])) AND (sp:"CEF")` in the Search bar, then click **Search**.

   The events with severity 0 to 5 are displayed. You can download the events in the `csv` format.

IV Maintaining Advanced Authentication

This chapter contains the following sections:

- Chapter 20, “Logging,” on page 209
- Chapter 21, “Reporting,” on page 225
- Chapter 22, “Managing Tokens,” on page 227
- Chapter 23, “Searching a Card Holder’s Information,” on page 229
- Chapter 24, “Troubleshooting,” on page 231

20 Logging

Advanced Authentication provides the logging functionality. All the administrative and user actions and events are logged in this section.

Logs help to debug a problem based on the event or action performed.

There is a hard coded log rotation based on the file size. The maximum size of a log file is 20 MB and for WebAuth logs it is 10 MB. Advanced Authentication stores the last ten log files of each type.

Advanced Authentication supports the following types of logs:

- "Syslog" on page 210
- "RADIUS Logs" on page 224
- "Async Logs" on page 224
- "Fingerprint Logs" on page 224

You can change a time zone in the upper-right section that displays your local time zone. The changes are applied for only the logs displayed and are not applied for the exported logs. Advanced Authentication resets the time zone when you switch from the **Logs** section or close the Administration portal.

Exporting the Logs

To export logs, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Logs**.
2. Select the log you want to export.
3. Click **Export**.
4. Specify a **Start date** and **End date** to determine the required logging period.
5. Click **Export**.

   The exported log files are displayed in the **File Name** section.
6. Click the exported log file package that is exported in the format `aucore-logs_<logging_period>.tar.gz` to download it.

Clearing the Logs

You can clear all the logs on the server that you are currently logged on. To clear the logs, perform the following steps:

1. In the **Logs** page, click **Clear**.

   A message appears to confirm that you want to continue clearing the logs.

   NOTE: It is a good practice to export logs to save as a backup before you delete them.
2. Click **OK** to clear the logs.

Syslog

These logs contain information about the system events and actions. The log message is displayed in the format `<date> <host> CEF:0|AAA|Core|<version>|<code>|<message>|<severity>|<endpoint>|<event>|<authentication method name>|<template owner>|<tenant name>|<user name>|<uwsgi process id>`.

The Syslogs are classified as follows:

- 0 - 99: Maintenance
- 100 - 199: Access
- 200 - 299: App data
- 300 - 399: Endpoints
- 400 - 499: Repositories
- 500 - 599: Local users
- 600 - 699: Repository users
- 700 - 799: User templates
- 800 - 999: Policies
- 900 - 1099: Licenses
- 1000 - 1100: Settings
- 1100 - 1200: Password filter
- 1201 - 1300: Background logon
- 1301 - 1400: Events
- 1401 - 1500: Chains

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
1	New Request	Operational	1	None	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|1|New Request|1|
2	Request failed	Operational	1	None	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|2|Request failed|1|p=3531
10	Server started	Operational	4	None	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|1|Server started|4|
12	Server stopped	Operational	7	None	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|2|Server stopped|7|
13	Server unexpectedly stopped	Operational	10	None	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|3|Server unexpectedly stopped|10
50	Server Message	Operational	5	Message	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|4|Server Message|4|This is my message

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
100	User logon started	Security	4	Username Ep Ep_addr Sid Unit_id Session_id Event Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|4|User logon started|4|username=Mycompany\\demo sid=S-1-5-XXX session_id=123 event=Windows Logon ep=aaadev1.Mycompany.local ep_addr=192.168.91.1 tenant_name=Mycompany
101	User was successfully logged on	Security	7	Username Ep Ep_addr Sid Session_id method_name method_comment method_infoEvent Tenant_name Template_owner	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|101|User was successfully logged on|7|username=Mycompany\\demo sid=S-1-5-XXX session_id=123 method_name=card method_comment=white card method_info=YYY password ep=aaadev1.Mycompany.local ep_addr=192.168.91.1 event=Windows Logon template_owner=Mycompany\\demo tenant_name=Mycompany\\AbbooPI p=9721
102	User was failed to authenticate	Security	9	Username Ep Ep_addr Sid Session_id Method_name Tenant_name Template_owner	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|6|User was failed to authenticate|9|Username=Mycompany\\demo sid=S-1-5-XXX session_id=123 method_name=card ep=aaadev1.Mycompany.local ep_addr=192.168.91.1 template_owner=Mycompany\\demo tenant_name=Mycompany
103	User was switched to different method	Security	2	Username Ep Ep_addr Sid Session_id New_method_name Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|7|User was switched to different method|2|username=Mycompany\\demo sid=S-1-5-XXX new_method_name=fingerprint session_id=123 ep=aaadev1.Mycompany.local ep_addr=192.168.91.1 tenant_name=Mycompany

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
104	User logon session was ended	Security	2	Username Ep Ep_addr Sid Session_id Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|8|User logon session was ended|2|username=Mycompany\\demo sid=S-1-5-XXX session_id=123 ep=aaadev1.Mycompany.local ep_addr=192.168.91.1 tenant_name=Mycompany
105	User logon unwanted	Security	9	Username Ep Ep_addr Method_name Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|8|User logon session was ended|9|username=Mycompany\\demo sid=S-1-5-XXX session_id=123 ep=aaadev1.Mycompany.local ep_addr=192.168.91.1 method_name=voice tenant_name=Mycompany
106	User was failed to authenticate method in the middle of a chain	Security	2	Username Ep Ep_addr Method_name Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 (UTC+0530) host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|106|User was failed to authenticate method in the middle of a chain|2|ep_addr=164.99.137.193 method_name=PASSWORD:1 tenant_name=TOP user_name=MFA\\topvisu p=3147
200	User read app data	Security	3	Username Ep Ep_addr Sid Session_id Data_id Record_id Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|9|User read app data|3|username=Mycompany\\demo sid=S-1-5-XXX session_id=123 data_id=Windows Logon record_id=password ep=aaadev1.Mycompany.local ep_addr=192.168.91.1 tenant_name=Mycompany
201	User write app data	Security	4	Username Ep Ep_addr Sid Session_id Data_id Record_id Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|10|User write app data|4|username=Mycompany\\demo sid=S-1-5-XXX session_id=123 data_id=Windows Logon record_id=password ep=aaadev1.Mycompany.local ep_addr=192.168.91.1 tenant_name=Mycompany

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
300	Endpoint joined	Security	4	Ep_name Ep_addr Ep_id Username Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|11|Endpoint joined|4|ep_name=xp_client ep_id=123 username=Mycompany\Admin ep_addr=192.168.91.1 tenant_name=Mycompany
301	No rights to join endpoint	Security	7	Ep_name Ep_addr Ep_id Username Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|12|No rights to join endpoint|7|ep_name=xp_client ep_id=123 username=Mycompany\Admin ep_addr=192.168.91.1 tenant_name=Mycompany
302	Failed to join endpoint	Operational	7	Ep_name Ep_addr Ep_id Username Reason Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|13|Failed to join endpoint |7|ep_name=xp_client ep_id=123 username=Mycompany\Admin ep_addr=192.168.91.1 reason=Duplicated tenant_name=Mycompany
303	Endpoint remove	Security	4	Ep_name Ep_addr Ep_id Username Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|14|Endpoint remove|4|ep_name=xp_client ep_id=123 username=Mycompany\Admin ep_addr=192.168.91.1
304	No rights to remove endpoint	Security	7	Ep_name Ep_addr Ep_id Username Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|15|No rights to remove endpoint|7|ep_name=xp_client ep_id=123 username=Mycompany\Admin ep_addr=192.168.91.1 tenant_name=Mycompany
305	Failed to remove endpoint	Operational	7	Ep_name Ep_addr Ep_id Username Reason Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|16|Failed to remove endpoint |7|ep_name=xp_client ep_id=123 username=Mycompany\Admin ep_addr=192.168.91.1 reason=Duplicated tenant_name=Mycompany

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
306	Endpoint session started	Operational	2	Ep_name Ep_addr Ep_id Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|306|Endpoint session started|2|ep_name=xp_client ep_id=123 ep_addr=192.168.91.1 tenant_name=Mycompany p=5428
307	Endpoint session ended	Operational	2	Ep_name Ep_addr Ep_id Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|18|Endpoint session ended|2|ep_name=xp_client ep_id=123 ep_addr=192.168.91.1 tenant_name=Mycompany
308	Invalid endpoint secret	Security	7	Ep_name Ep_addr Ep_id Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|17|Invalid endpoint secret|2|ep_name=xp_client ep_id=123 ep_addr=192.168.91.1 tenant_name=Mycompany
309	Failed to create endpoint session	Operational	7	Ep_name Ep_addr Ep_id Reason Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|18| Failed to create endpoint session |7|ep_name=xp_client ep_id=123 ep_addr=192.168.91.1 reason=No memory tenant_name=Mycompany
310	Failed to end endpoint session	Operational	7	Ep_name Ep_addr Ep_id Reason Tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|18| Failed to create endpoint session |7|ep_name=xp_client ep_id=123 ep_addr=192.168.91.1 reason=No memory tenant_name=Mycompany
401	New repository was added	Operational	4	repo_name repo_type session_id tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|19|New repository was added |4|repo_name=Mycompany repo_type=LDAP session_id=123 tenant_name=Mycompany

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
402	Failed to add repository	Operational	7	repo_name repo_type session_id reason tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|20| Failed to add repository|7|repo_name=Mycompany repo_type=LDAP session_id=123 reason=repo already exists tenant_name=Mycompany
403	Repository was removed	Operational	4	repo_name repo_type session_id tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|21|Repository was removed|4|repo_name=Mycompany repo_type=LDAP session_id=123 tenant_name=Mycompany
404	Failed to remove repository	Operational	7	repo_name repo_type session_id reason tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|22|Failed to remove repository|7| repo_name=Mycompany repo_type=LDAP session_id=123 reason=not empty tenant_name=Mycompany
405	Repository configuration was changed	Operational	4	repo_name repo_type session_id reason tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|23|Repository configuration was changed|4| repo_name=Mycompany repo_type=LDAP session_id=123 tenant_name=Mycompany
501	Local user was created	Operational	4	user_name session_id tenant_name target_user_name	2018-08-29T12:46:21.485790 (UTC+0530)+00:00 linux CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|501|Local user was created|4|target_user_name=syslog_1 tenant_name=TOP user_name=LOCAL\\ADMIN p=8103
502	Local user was removed	Operational	5	user_name session_id tenant_name target_user_name	2018-08-29T12:45:46.701541 (UTC+0530)+00:00 linux CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|502|Local user was removed|5|target_user_name=SAMPLE tenant_name=TOP user_name=LOCAL\\ADMIN p=8105

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
503	Failed to create local user	Operational	4	user_name session_id tenant_name target_user_name	2018-08-29T12:45:25.343315 (UTC+0530)+00:00 linux CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|503|Failed to create local user|4|reason=transaction<space>aborted target_user_name=Sample tenant_name=TOP user_name=LOCAL\\ADMIN p=8107
504	No rights to remove local user	Security	7	user_name session_id tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|26|ailed to create local user|4|user_name=admin session_id=123 reason=already exists tenant_name=Mycompany
505	Failed to remove local user	Operational	5	user_name session_id reason tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|28|Failed to remove local user|5|user_name=admin session_id=123 reason=can't remove currently logged on user tenant_name=Mycompany
506	No rights to create local user	Security	7	user_name session_id tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|29|Failed to create local user|7|user_name=admin session_id=123 tenant_name=Mycompany
601	User was created	Operational	4	user_name session_id repo_name tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|30|User was created|4|username=Someone session_id=123 repo_name=Mycompany tenant_name=Mycompany
602	No rights to create user	Security	7	user_name session_id repo_name tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|31|No rights to create user|7|username=Someone session_id=123 repo_name=Mycompany tenant_name=Mycompany

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
603	Failed to create user	Operational	4	user_name session_id repo_name reason tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|32|Failed to create user|4|user_name=someone session_id=123 repo_name=123 reason=already exists tenant_name=Mycompany
604	User was removed	Operational	5	user_name session_id repo_name tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|33|User was removed|5|username=Someone session_id=123 repo_name=Mycompany tenant_name=Mycompany
605	No rights to remove user	Security	7	user_name session_id repo_name tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|34No rights to remove user|7|username=Someone session_id=123 repo_name=Mycompany tenant_name=Mycompany
606	Failed to remove user	Operational	5	user_name session_id repo_name reason tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|35|Failed to remove user|5|user_name=someone session_id=123 repo_name=123 reason=not found tenant_name=Mycompany
607	Role was granted to user	Operational	7	user_name session_id tenant_name target_user_name role_name	2018-08-29T12:46:31.839284 (UTC+0530)+00:00 linux CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|607|Role has been granted to user|7|role_name=FULL<space>ADMINS target_user_name=SYSLOG_1 tenant_name=TOP user_name=LOCAL\\ADMIN p=8105
608	Failed to grant role to user	Operational	8	user_name session_id tenant_name target_user_name role_name	2018-08-29T12:46:31.839284 (UTC+0530)+00:00 linux CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|608|Failed to grant role to user|8|role_name=FULL<space>ADMINS target_user_name=SYSLOG_1 tenant_name=TOP user_name=LOCAL\\ADMIN p=8105

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
609	Role was revoked from user	Operational	7	user_name session_id tenant_name target_user_name role_name	2018-08-29T12:46:35.776761 (UTC+0530)+00:00 linux CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|609|Role has been revoked from user|7|role_name=FULL<space>ADMINS target_user_name=SYSLOG_1 tenant_name=TOP user_name=LOCAL\\ADMIN p=8103
610	Failed to revoke role from user	Operational	8	user_name session_id tenant_name target_user_name role_name	2018-08-29T12:46:35.776761 (UTC+0530)+00:00 linux CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|610|Failed to revoke role from user|8|role_name=FULL<space>ADMINS target_user_name=SYSLOG_1 tenant_name=TOP user_name=LOCAL\\ADMIN p=8103
701	Template was assigned to the user	Security	7	user_name session_id ap_name comment tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|36|Template was assigned to the user|7|user_name=Mycompany\some session_id=123 ap_name=Card comment=white card tenant_name=Mycompany
702	Template was enrolled for the user	Security	7	user_name session_id ap_name comment tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|37|Template was enrolled for the user|7|user_name=Mycompany\some session_id=123 ap_name=hand 3D comment=left hand tenant_name=Mycompany
703	User enroll the assigned template	Security	7	user_name session_id ap_name comment tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|38|User enroll the assigned template|7|user_name=Mycompany\some session_id=123 ap_name=hand 3D comment=left hand tenant_name=Mycompany

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
704	Template is linked	Security	8	user_name target_user_name session_id ap_name comment tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|39|Template is linked|8|user_name=Mycompany\some target_user_name=Mycompany\boss session_id=123 ap_name=hand 3D comment=left hand tenant_name=Mycompany
705	Failed to assign template to the user	Security	7	user_name session_id ap_name comment reason tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|40|Failed to assign template to the user|7|user_name=Mycompany\some session_id=123 ap_name=Card comment=white card reason=no license tenant_name=Mycompany
706	Failed to enroll template for the user	Security	7	user_name session_id ap_name comment reason tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|41|Failed to enroll template for the user|7|user_name=Mycompany\some session_id=123 ap_name=hand 3D comment=left hand reason=ap error tenant_name=Mycompany
707	User can't enroll the assigned template	Security	7	user_name session_id ap_name comment reason tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|41|User can't enroll the assigned template|7|user_name=Mycompany\some session_id=123 ap_name=hand 3D comment=left hand reason=AP not installed on client side tenant_name=Mycompany
709	Failed to link template	Security	8	user_name target_user_name session_id ap_name comment reason tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|42|Failed to link template|8|user_name=Mycompany\some target_user_name=Mycompany\boss session_id=123 ap_name=hand 3D comment=left hand reason=target user can't be found tenant_name=Mycompany

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
709	Template link was removed	Security	6	user_name target_user_name session_id ap_name comment tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|43|Template link was removed|6|user_name=Mycompany\some target_user_name=Mycompany\boss session_id=123 ap_name=hand 3D comment=left hand tenant_name=Mycompany
710	Failed to remove template link	Security	6	user_name target_user_name session_id ap_name comment reason tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|44|Failed to remove template link|6|user_name=Mycompany\some target_user_name=Mycompany\boss session_id=123 ap_name=hand 3D comment=left hand reason=too small carma tenant_name=Mycompany
711	Template was removed	Security	6	user_name ap_name comment session_id tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|45|Template was removed|6|user_name=Mycompany\some session_id=123 ap_name=hand 3D comment=left hand tenant_name=Mycompany
712	Failed to remove template	Security	6	user_name ap_name comment session_id reason tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|46|Failed to remove template|6|user_name=Mycompany\some session_id=123 ap_name=hand 3D comment=left hand reason=only owner can remove template tenant_name=Mycompany
713	Template was changed	Security	7	user_name ap_name comment session_id tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|47|Template was changed|7|user_name=Mycompany\some session_id=123 ap_name=hand 3D comment=left hand tenant_name=Mycompany

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
714	Failed to change template	Security	6	user_name ap_name comment session_id reason tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|48|Failed to change template|6|user_name=Mycompany\some session_id=123 ap_name=hand 3D comment=left hand reason=only owner can change template tenant_name=Mycompany
715	Template was changed during logon	Security	5	user_name ap_name comment session_id tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|49|Template was changed during logon|7|user_name=Mycompany\some session_id=123 ap_name=TOTP comment=ASA (iPhone) tenant_name=Mycompany
801	Policy was changed	Security	7	session_id scope comp_name policy_name old_value new_value	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|50|Policy was changed|7|session_id=123 scope=global comp_name=password poliices policy_name=minimal password length old_value=4 new_value=8
802	No rights to change policy	Security	8	session_id scope comp_name policy_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|51|No rights to change policy|8|session_id=123 scope=global comp_name=password poliices policy_name=minimal password
803	Failed to change policy	Operational	7	session_id scope comp_name policy_name reason	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|52|Failed to change policy|7|session_id=123 scope=global comp_name=password poliices policy_name=minimal password reason=policy not found
901	New license was added	Operational	3	session_id license_id users_count enabled_features expire_date	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|53|New license was added|3|session_id=123 license_id=111 users_count=101 enabled_features=client,rte,nps expire_date=31/12/2014

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
902	Failed to add license	Operational	8	session_id license_id users_count enabled_features expire_date reason	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|54|Failed to add license|8|session_id=123 license_id=111 users_count=101 enabled_features=client,rte,nps expire_date=31/12/2013 reason=already expired
1001	Global setting was changed	Security	9	session_id setting_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|55|Global setting was changed|9|session_id=123 setting_name=syslog_server
1002	No rights to change global setting	Security	9	session_id setting_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|56|No rights to change global setting|9|session_id=123 setting_name=syslog_server
1003	Failed to change global setting	Operational	9	session_id setting_name reason	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|57|Failed to change global setting|9|session_id=123 setting_name=syslog_server reason=server is unavailable
1101	Password was changed	Security	5	user_name ep ep_addr tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|15|Password was changed|5|ep=xp_client user_name=Mycompany\Admin ep_addr=192.168.91.1 tenant_name=Mycompany
1102	Password was reset	Security	8	user_name ep ep_addr tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|15|Password was reset|8|ep=xp_client user_name=Mycompany\Admin ep_addr=192.168.91.1 tenant_name=Mycompany
1201	User successfully logged on using local cache	Security	8	user_name ep_addr event chain_name logon_time tenant_name	June 10 20:10:11 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|1201|User successfully logged on using local cache|8|ep=xp_client user_name=Mycompany\Admin ep_addr=192.168.91.1 event=windows logon chain_name=LDAP+SMS logon_time=2017-11-05 08:10:03 tenant_name=Mycompany

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
1301	Event was created sucessfully	Security	4	event tenant_name	Jan 03 17:04:10 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|1301|Event was created sucessfully|4|event=Windows logon tenant_name=TOP p=9171
1302	Failed to create event	Operational	7	event tenant_name reason	
1303	Event was changed sucessfully	Security	4	event tenant_name	Jan 03 17:05:21 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|1303|Event was changed sucessfully|4|event=Linux logon tenant_name=TOP p=9163
1304	Failed to change event	Operational	7	event tenant_name reason	
1305	Event was removed sucessfully	Security	4	event tenant_name	Jan 03 17:06:40 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|1305|Event was removed sucessfully|4|event=linux logon tenant_name=TOP p=9171
1306	Failed to remove event	Operational	7	event tenant_name reason	
1401	Chain was created sucessfully	Security	4	chain_name tenant_name	Jan 03 16:54:09 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|1401|Chain was created sucessfully|4|chain_name=password tenant_name=TOP p=9171
1402	Failed to create chain	Operational	7	chain_name tenant_name reason	
1403	Chain was changed sucessfully	Security	4	chain_name tenant_name	Jan 03 16:59:45 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|1403|Chain was changed sucessfully|4|chain_name=SMS tenant_name=TOP p=9171
1404	Failed to change chain	Operational	7	chain_name tenant_name reason	
1405	Chain was removed sucessfully	Security	4	chain_name tenant_name	Jan 03 16:56:16 host CEF:0|AAA|Core|5.0|1405|Chain was removed sucessfully|4|chain_name=email OTP tenant_name=TOP p=9163

Code	Name	Class	Severity	Optional Parameters	Example
1406	Failed to remove chain	Operational	7	chain_name tenant_name reason	

RADIUS Logs

These logs contain information about the logs that are recorded for the RADIUS server.

On the server, the `radius.log` file is stored in the `/var/lib/docker/volumes/aaf_radiusd-logs/_data/` directory.

After you export the RADIUS logs, you can find the `radius.log` file in the `/var/log/freeradius/` directory.

Async Logs

These logs contain information about the asynchronized delivery of OTP messages for the SMS, Email, and Voice methods.

On the server, the `async_commander.log` and `async_commander.*.log` files are stored in the `/var/lib/docker/volumes/aaf_aucore-logs/_data/` directory.

After you export the Async logs, you can find the `async_commander.log` and `async_commander.*.log` files in the `/opt/AuCore/logs/` directory.

Fingerprint Logs

These logs contain all information from a Fingerprint service.

On the server, the `nbisd.log` file is stored in the `/var/lib/docker/volumes/aaf_afisd-logs/_data/` directory.

21 Reporting

Advanced Authentication facilitates you to add and view reports according to your requirement. You can view information about the memory utilization, tenant information, successful or failed logins, licenses, and so forth in a graphical representation. You can also export these reports to JSON and CSV formats.

To log in to the Advanced Authentication Reporting portal, launch the URL: `https://<NetIQServer>/report` and log in with your credentials.

For more information, see “Adding a Report” section.

22 Managing Tokens

Managing Tokens functionality helps you to import a file that contains information about multiple tokens and you can assign the tokens to specific users such that the user can pass through the OATH authentication method.

To access Tokens Management portal, you must assign chains to the **Tokens Management** event in the **Events** section.

To import token files, perform the following steps:

1. Log in to the Advanced Authentication Tokens Management portal (`https://<AdvancedAuthenticationServer>/tokens`).
2. Click **Add**.
3. Click **Browse** and add a `PSKC` or `CSV` file.
4. Select the **File type**. The options available are:
   - **OATH compliant PSKC**: This file type must be compliant with OATH. For example, HID OATH TOTP compliant tokens.
   - **OATH csv**: This file type must contain the format as described in CSV File Format To Import OATH Compliant Tokens. You cannot use the YubiKey CSV files.
   - **Yubico csv**: In this file type, you must use one of the supported **Log configuration output** (see **YubiKey Personalization Tool > Settings tab > Logging Settings**) formats with comma as a delimiter.
     - Traditional format: In this file type, **OATH Token Identifier** must be enabled.
     - Yubico format: This file type is supported only for **HOTP Length** set to **6 Digits** and **OATH Token Identifier** set to **All numeric**.

     IMPORTANT: **Moving Factor Seed** must not exceed 100000.
5. Add the encrypted `PSKC` files. Select **Password** or **Pre-shared key** in **PSKC file encryption type** and provide the information.
6. Click **Upload** to import tokens from the file.

NOTE: Advanced Authentication receives an **OTP format** from the imported tokens file and stores the information in the enrolled authenticator. Therefore, Advanced Authentication administrator need not change the default value of **OTP format** on the **Method Settings Edit** tab. For more information on the OTP format, see OATH OTP.

When the tokens are imported, you can see the list of tokens on the Tokens Management Portal. You must assign these tokens to the users. The tokens can be assigned either by an administrator or by user in the following ways:

- As an administrator, you can do the following:
  1. Click **Edit** next to the token.

2. Select **Owner**.
3. Click **Save**.

- A user can self-enroll a token in the Self-Service portal. Administrator must let the user know an appropriate value from the **Serial** column for the self-enrollment.

CSV File Format To Import OATH Compliant Tokens

A `CSV` file, which is imported as `OATH csv` file in the **Administration portal** > **Methods** > **OATH OTP** > **OATH Tokens** tab, must contain fields with the following parameters:

- Token's serial number
- Token's seed
- (Optional) Type of the token: TOTP or HOTP (by default HOTP)
- (Optional) OTP length (default value is 6 digits)
- (Optional) Time step (default value is 30 seconds)

Comma is a delimiter.

The following is an example of a CSV file:

```
Token001, 15d2fa517d3c6b791bd4cc2044c241429307001f
Token002, 8c557fc050721037fd31e1d3345b5d3263263e0f, totp, 8
Token003, 658208efea5ac49d5331ba781e66f2c808cccc8e, hotp, 6
Token004, 89f0dfe1c90379da6a11aaca2fc1070f606efe36, totp, 6, 60
```

IMPORTANT: For the YubiKey tokens, you must use the traditional format of the CSV (check **YubiKey Personalization Tool > Settings tab > Logging Settings**) with comma as a delimiter. Use Yubico csv file type (**Advanced Authentication Administration portal > Methods > OATH OTP > OATH Tokens**).

---

23 Searching a Card Holder's Information

With the Search Card portal, you can get a card holder's contact information by tapping the card on the card reader. Information such as name of the card holder, repository information, email address, and mobile number of the user can be obtained.

You must assign chains to the **Search card** event in the **Events** section.

IMPORTANT: To use this feature, you must have the Device Service installed on the computer.

To get the user information from the card, perform the following steps:

1. Log in to the Advanced Authentication Search Card portal (`https://<AdvancedAuthenticationServer>/search-card`).
2. Tap a card on the card reader. The card holder's user name, repository information, email address, and mobile number are displayed.

   NOTE: If the card was not enrolled before, a message `No user was found for this card` is displayed.

   ---

24 Troubleshooting

NOTE: This chapter contains solutions for known issues. If you encounter any problems that are not mentioned here, contact the support service.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- "The ON/OFF Switch Is Broken If the Screen Resolution Is 110%" on page 231
- "Users Can Login Using the Old Password" on page 231
- "Error is Displayed in the User Report Section of the Helpdesk Portal" on page 231

The ON/OFF Switch Is Broken If the Screen Resolution Is 110%

While trying to edit the **Lockout options** policy, the **ON/OFF** switch is broken when the screen resolution is 110%.

As a solution, change the screen resolution to 100%.

Users Can Login Using the Old Password

Issue: When users use the **LDAP Password only** chain for authentication and change their LDAP password, they are still able to log in with their old LDAP password.

Workaround: You must disable the cache logon on Domain Controllers. To disable the cache logon, you must make the following registry changes:

1. Open the registry key: `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Lsa\.`
2. Create a `DWORD` parameter `OldPasswordAllowedPeriod` and set the parameter's value to `0`.

Error is Displayed in the User Report Section of the Helpdesk Portal

Issue: The following error is displayed when navigating to the **User Report** tab of the Helpdesk portal on a web server:

```
ConnectionError

HTPPSConnectionPool(host='<hostname>, port=443):Max retries exceeded with url:

/admin/api/reports/multisite/table Caused by ProxyError('Cannot connect to
proxy.', OSError('Tunnel connection failed: 503 Service Unavailable',))) (Unknown
Error)
```

Solution: Perform the following steps:

1. Use yast to set the **NO_PROXY** settings:

```
sudo yast proxy
```

2 Add the internal company's domain (for example, .sample.com) that exists under **No Proxy Domains**.

3 Restart the configuration:

```
sudo systemctl restart proxyenv aauth
```